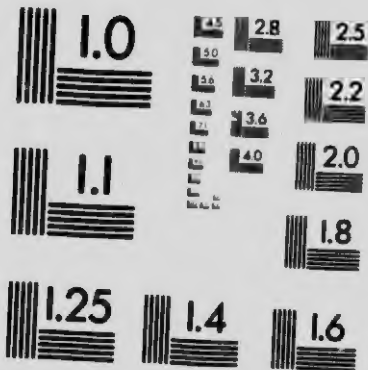


# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED

1653 East Main  
Rochester, New York  
(716) 482-0300 - Phone  
(716) 288-5989 - Fax

4GE Inc

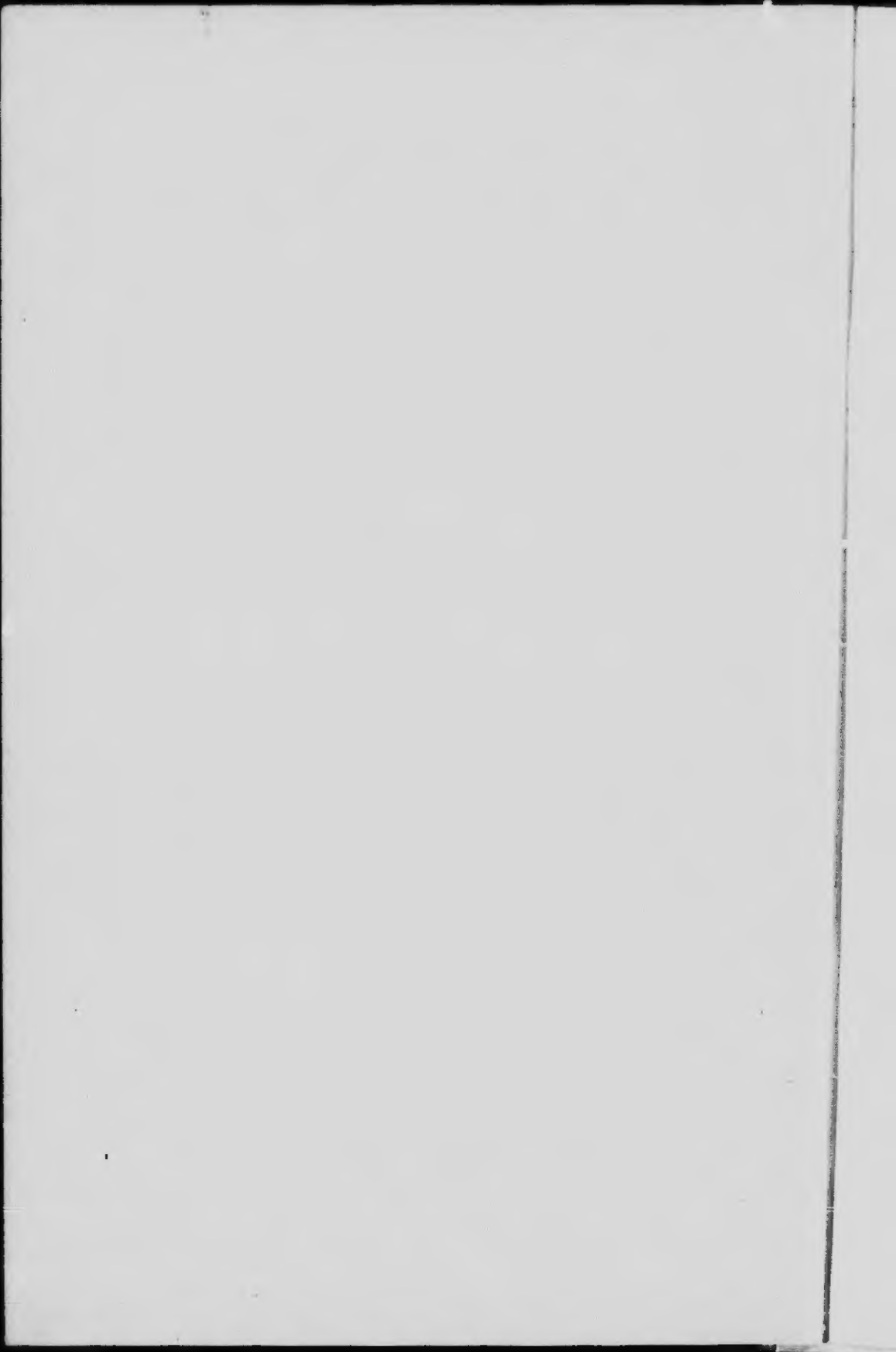
14609 USA

ACROSS THE  
SUB-ARCTICS  
OF CANADA

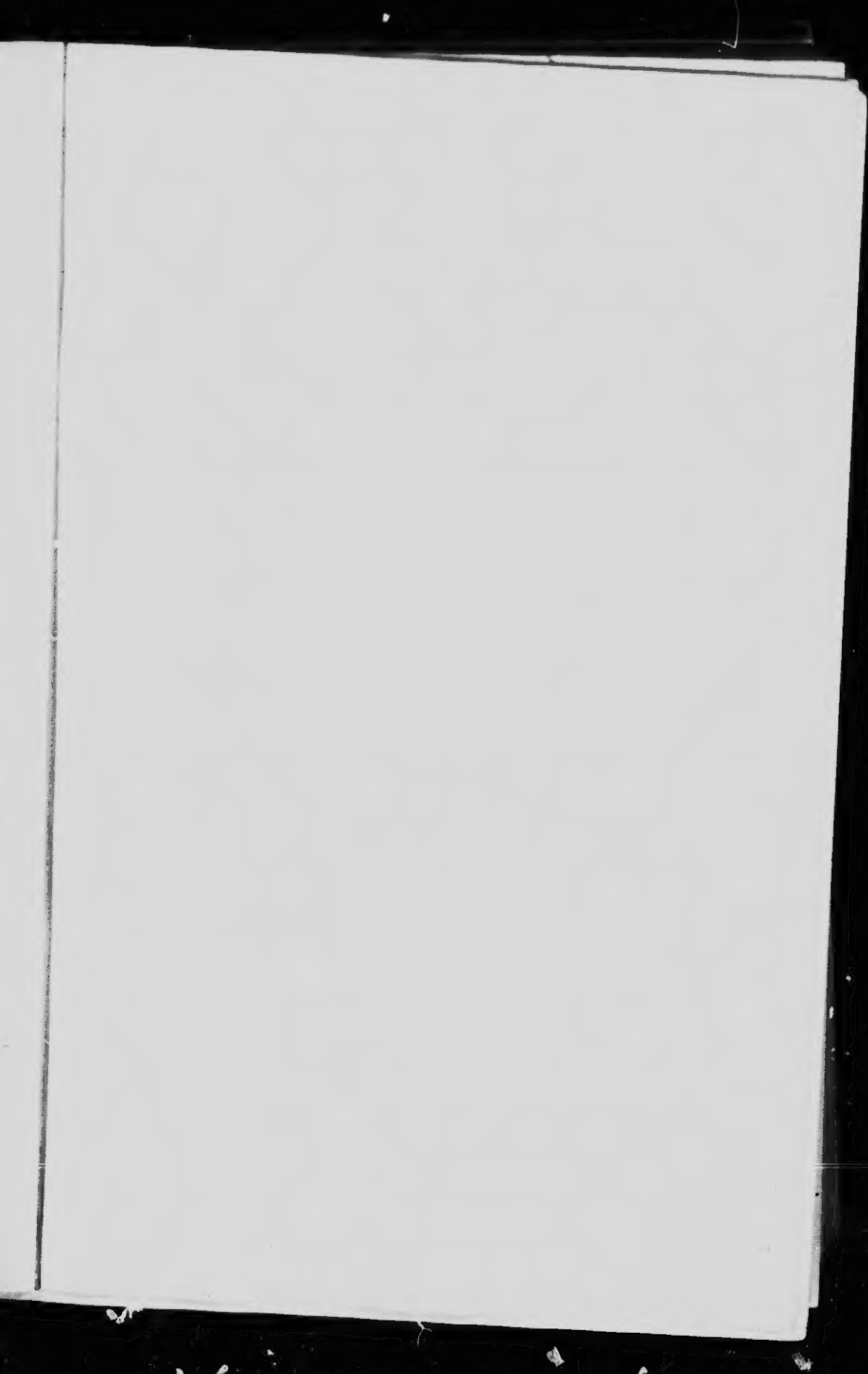


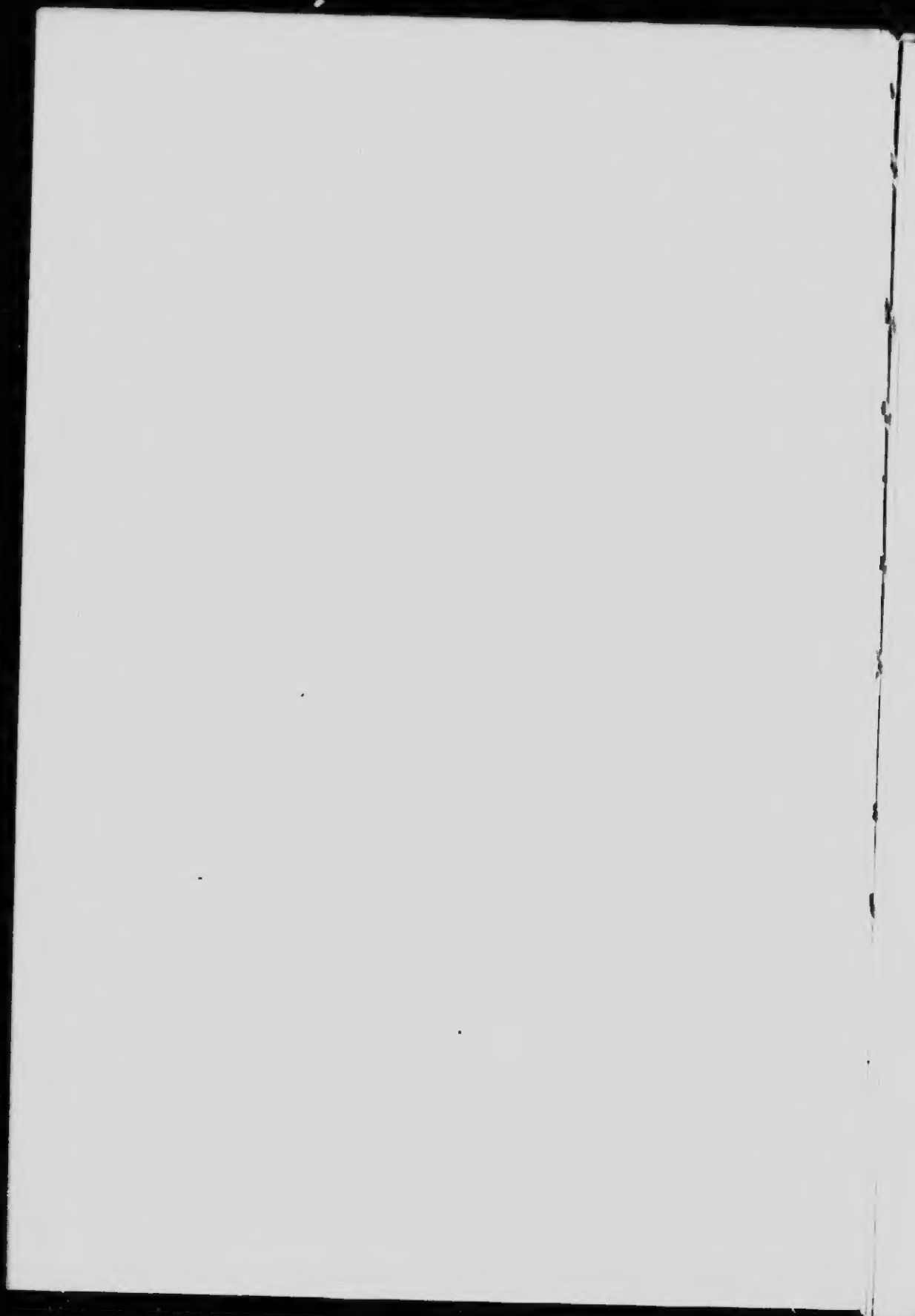
J. W. TYRRELL

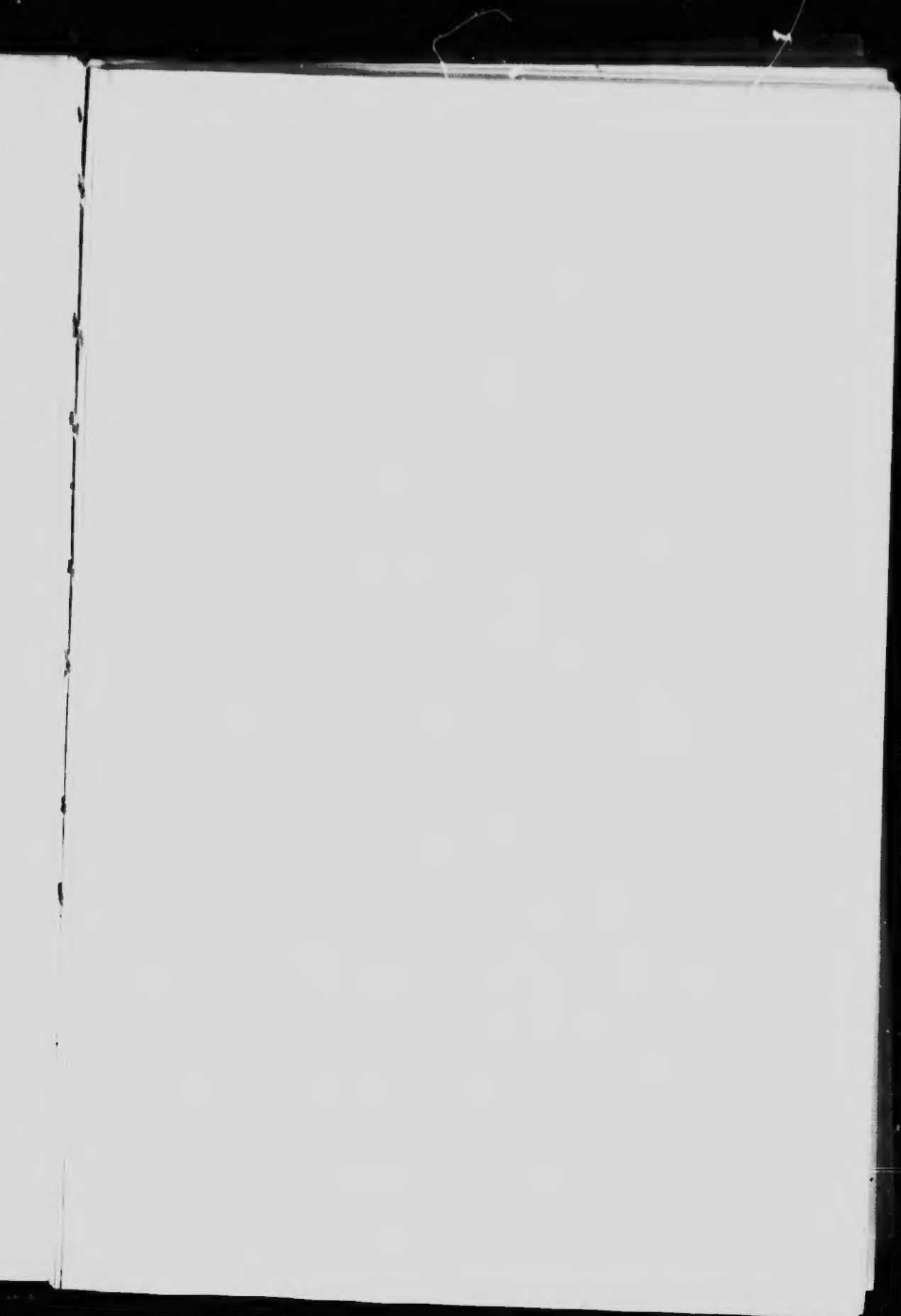
10













Yours truly  
James W. Taylor





James B. Tyrrell

# ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

A JOURNEY OF 3,200 MILES BY CANOE  
AND SNOWSHOE THROUGH THE  
HUDSON BAY REGION

BY  
JAMES W. TYRRELL, C.E., D.L.S.

Including a List of Plants collected on the way, a Vocabulary  
of Eskimo Words, and a Map showing  
the Route of the Expedition.

With new Illustrations from Photographs taken on the Journey,  
and from Drawings by

ARTHUR HEMING and J. S. GORDON

THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

TORONTO  
WILLIAM BRIGGS  
1908

152534

TYRRELL, J. W.

Copyright, Canada, 1908,  
by James Williams Tyrrell.

c  
c  
l  
D  
c  
ex  
ac  
an  
sa  
ac  
M  
of  
an  
my  
Ty  
tion  
T  
volu

O



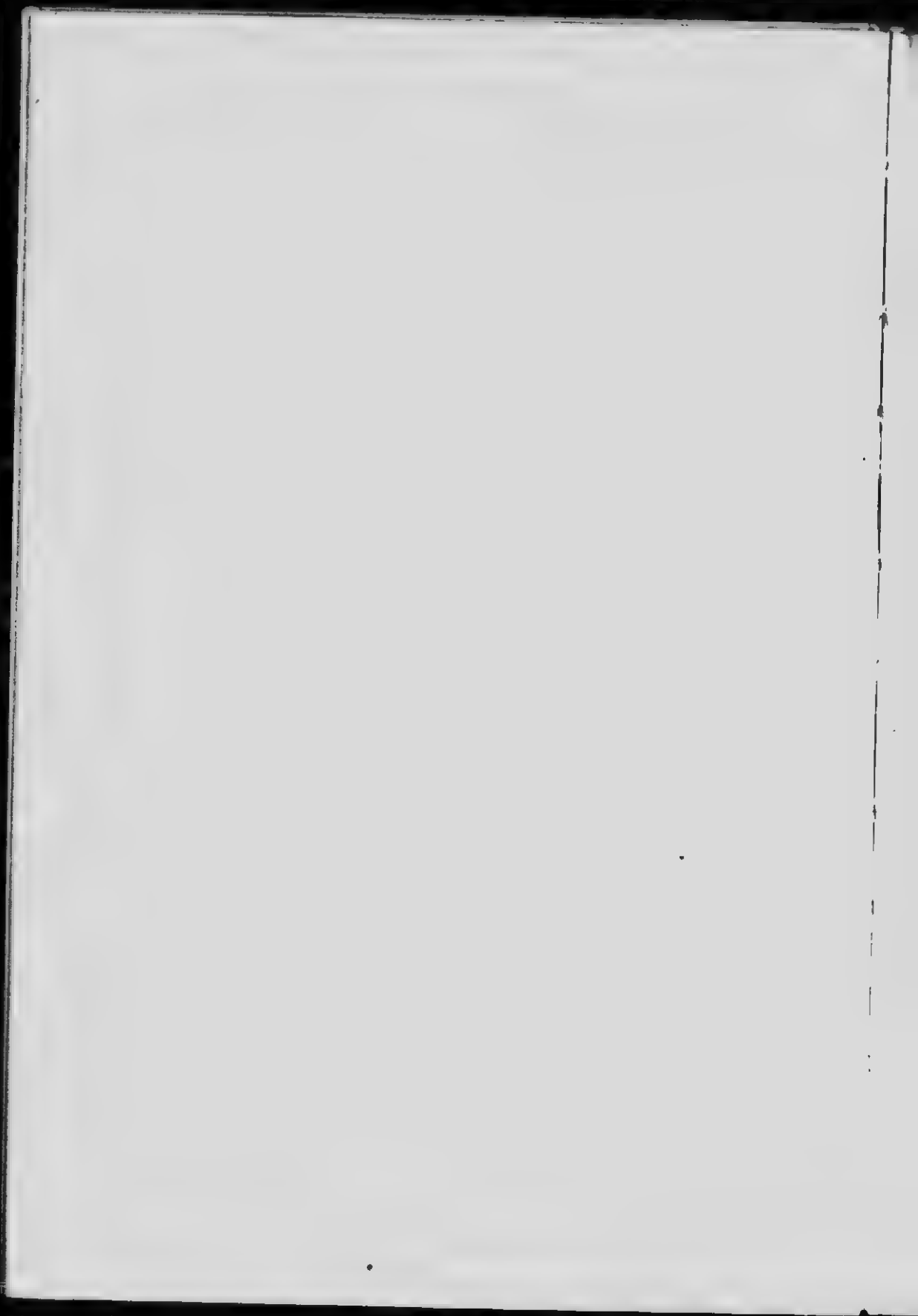
## NOTE TO THIRD EDITION

IN preparing a third edition of this book, which has been out of print for several years, the only apology I have to offer is that which has been passed on to me from the publishers, viz., the continued demand for copies. In doing so I wish to state that not only has the original edition been carefully revised, but that most of my illustrations are entirely new, and that new maps and new chapters have been added, descriptive of the hunting and habits of musk-oxen, and the history, resources and navigation of our great inland saltwater system, Hudson Bay and Strait. I wish also to acknowledge the kindness of Messrs. W. W. Cory, Deputy Minister, and James White, Geographer, of the Department of the Interior, for the use of plates of the Dominion map, and further, to say that most of the photographs from which my illustrations are made were taken by my brother, J. B. Tyrrell, without whose direction and courage our expedition of 1893 could not have been.

To my brother, therefore, with most kindly wishes, is this volume dedicated.

J. W. TYRRELL.

October 26th, 1908.



# CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. TORONTO TO ATHABASCA LANDING . . . . .	9
II. DOWN THE ATHABASCA . . . . .	19
III. RUNNING THE RAPIDS . . . . .	34
IV. CHIPEWYAN TO BLACK LAKE . . . . .	45
V. INTO THE UNKNOWN WILDERNESS . . . . .	65
VI. THE HOME OF THE CARIBOU . . . . .	73
VII. A GREAT FROZEN LAKE . . . . .	82
VIII. ON THE LOWER DUBAWNT . . . . .	93
IX. HUNTING THE MUSK-OX . . . . .	105
X. MEETING WITH NATIVES . . . . .	113
XI. THE ESKIMOS . . . . .	123
XII. OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS . . . . .	139
XIII. DOWN TO THE SEA . . . . .	162
XIV. ADVENTURES BY LAND AND SEA . . . . .	170
XV. POLAR BEARS . . . . .	177
XVI. LIFE OR DEATH? . . . . .	185
XVII. FORT CHURCHILL . . . . .	194
XVIII. ON SNOWSHOES AND DOG-SLEDS . . . . .	202
XIX. CROSSING THE NELSON . . . . .	210
XX. THROUGH THE FOREST AND HOME AGAIN . . . . .	219
XXI. HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET . . . . .	229
APPENDIX	
I. PLANTS COLLECTED ON THE EXPEDITION . . . . .	253
II. ESKIMO VOCABULARY OF WORDS AND PHRASES . . . . .	277



## ILLUSTRATIONS

	Page
J. W. TYRRELL . . . . .	Frontispiece
MAP OF CANADA, SHOWING ROUTE OF TYRRELL EXPEDITION . . . . .	8
SOME OF OUR MEN . . . . .	11
J. B. TYRRELL . . . . .	12
HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY TRADERS . . . . .	14
AN H. B. C. INTERPRETER . . . . .	15
A PIONEER OF THE NORTH . . . . .	16
INDIA IS OF THE CANADIAN NORTH-WEST . . . . .	18
TRANQUIL WATERS . . . . .	21
MOOSE CALF AND ITS CAPTORS . . . . .	25
SCOWS AT THE HEAD OF GRAND RAPIDS . . . . .	26
TROOPER R. N.-W. MOUNTED POLICE IN WINTER UNIFORM . . . . .	26
STEAMER "ATHABASCA" . . . . .	28
GRAND RAPIDS, ATHABASCA RIVER . . . . .	30
ENGLISH-CHIPLEWYAN HALF-BREED . . . . .	31
A TATTOOED CREE CHIEF . . . . .	32
SHOOTING A RAPID . . . . .	35
STORE, FORT McMURRAY . . . . .	38
AN INDIAN CAMP . . . . .	40
STEAMER "GRAHAME" . . . . .	41
ASHORE FOR LUNCH . . . . .	43
FORT CHIPLEWYAN, LAKE ATHABASCA . . . . .	46
LANDING GOODS FROM THE STEAMER . . . . .	48
SAILBOATS ON LAKE ATHABASCA . . . . .	49
LANDING ON NORTH SHORE OF LAKE ATHABASCA . . . . .	51
A CLUMP OF JACK-PINES . . . . .	53
A YORK BOAT UNDER SAIL . . . . .	54
A YORK BOAT AT A RIVER LANDING . . . . .	56
INDIAN LOG HOUSE . . . . .	59
CATARACT, STONE RIVER . . . . .	60
ON THE PORTAGE . . . . .	62
RAFTS LOADED WITH VENISON . . . . .	63
NECK DEVELOPED BY THE TUMP-LINE . . . . .	64
STARTING OFF ON THE TRAIL . . . . .	66
AN ENGLISH-CREE TRAPPER . . . . .	72
THE DUBAWNT RIVER . . . . .	75
RAPIDS ON THE DUBAWNT RIVER . . . . .	76
HERD OF BARREN GROUND CARIBOU . . . . .	80
A FOREST OF ANTLERS . . . . .	81
THE FLAG FLOATING AT "CARIBOU CAMP" . . . . .	83
ICE ON THE SHORE OF MARKHAM LAKE . . . . .	84
A GOOD CATCH . . . . .	86

## ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
RAPIDS ON THE LOWER DUBAWNT	94
ESKIMO LODGE, DUBAWNT RIVER	96
TYPICAL BARREN LANDS RAPID	99
ESKIMO CAIRN, ABERDEEN LAKE	103
MUSK-OXEN	104
THE HUNTER HUNTED	111
ESKIMO WOMEN AND CHILDREN	118
GROUP OF ESKIMOS	119
ESKIMOS IN KYACKS	121
ESKIMO MAN AND WOMAN	122
WOODEN SNOWGOOGLES	129
SECTION THROUGH ESKIMO IGLOO	131
ESKIMO KYACKS	135
THE AUTHOR IN ESKIMO COSTUME	137
ESKIMO SLEEPING-BAG	140
ESKIMO IMPLEMENTS AND WEAPONS	143
ESKIMO HUNTERS	147
ESKIMO LANCE, HARPOONS AND SPEARS	154
ESKIMO GAMES AND TOYS	169
RUINS OF ESKIMO LODGES, CHESTERFIELD INLET	176
EXPLORING RANKIN INLET, HUDSON BAY	183
AN ENCOUNTER WITH POLAR BEARS	190
THE LAST MEAL—A GLOOMY OUTLOOK	193
CAMP SCENE ON WEST SHORE, HUDSON BAY	195
H. B. C.'S POST, FORT CHURCHILL	196
COAST BOATS AND CHURCH, FORT CHURCHILL	197
REV JOSEPH LOFTHOUSE AND FAMILY	199
FACSIMILE OF DRAWING ON ROCK AT SLOOPS COVE	200
RUINS OF FORT PRINCE OF WALES—EXTERIOR VIEW	201
RUINS OF FORT PRINCE OF WALES—INTERIOR VIEW	202
J. B. TYRRELL IN ESKIMO COSTUME (LEAVING FORT CHURCHILL)	209
FACSIMILE OF INSCRIPTION ON ROCK AT SLOOPS COVE	210
HALF-BREED DOG-DRIVER	218
H. B. CO.'S STORE, YORK FACTORY	222
OUR SLED PARTY DRAWN UP AT A DESERTED CABIN	225
NORWAY HOUSE, LAKE WINNIPEG	226
AN H. B. CO.'S TRADING-POST IN WINTER	228
OUR PARTY ON THE RETURN TRIP	228
DOG-TRAIN AND CARRYALL	230
MAP OF CHURCHILL HARBOR	252
MAP OF HUDSON BAY ROUTE	252
A CREE HUNTER'S PRIZE	252
CARRYING THE MAIL TO MOOSE FACTORY	276

Page

94

96

99

103

104

111

118

119

21

22

29

31

35

37

38

40

3

7

4

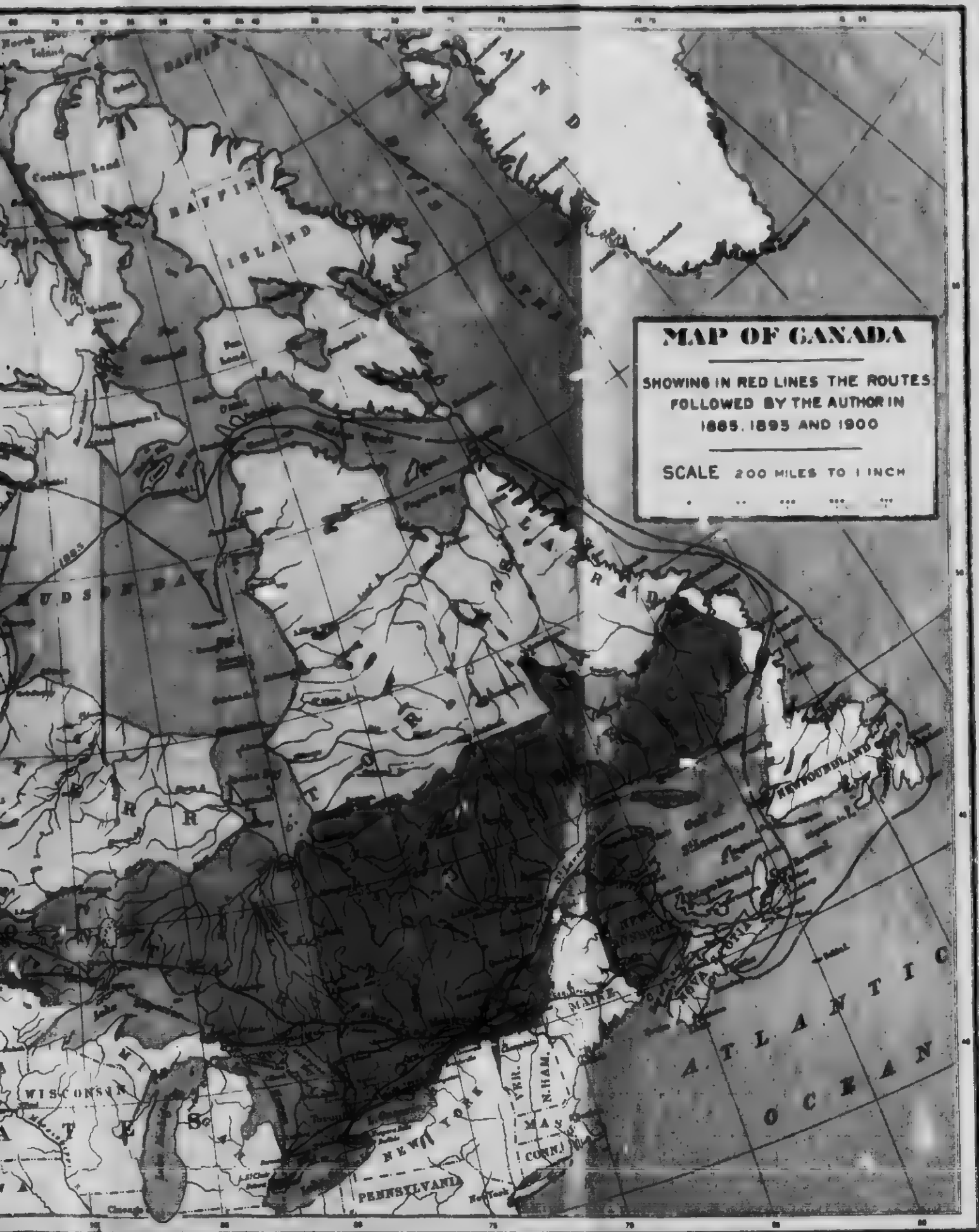
9

3

3







## MAP OF CANADA

SHOWING IN RED LINES THE ROUTES  
FOLLOWED BY THE AUTHOR IN  
1885, 1893 AND 1900

SCALE 200 MILES TO 1 INCH



# Across the Sub-Arctics of Canada

## CHAPTER I.

### TORONTO TO ATHABASCA LANDING.

ONE beautiful May morning several years ago, in response to a telegram from Ottawa, I took train at Hamilton for Toronto, to meet my brother, J. Burr Tyrrell, of the Canadian Geological Survey, and make final arrangements for a trip to the North.

He had been authorized by the Director of that important department of the Canadian Government to conduct, in company with myself, an exploratory survey through the great mysterious region of *terra incognita* commonly known as the Barren Lands, more than two hundred thousand square miles in extent, lying north of the 59th parallel of latitude, between Great Slave Lake and Hudson Bay. Of almost this entire territory less was known than of the remotest districts of "Darkest Africa," and, with but few exceptions, its vast and dreary plains had never been trodden by the foot of man, save that of the dusky savage.

During a former journey my brother had obtained some information concerning it from the Chipewyan Indians in the vicinity of Athabasca and Black lakes, but even these native tribes were found to have only the vaguest ideas of the character of the country that lay beyond a few days' journey inland.

In addition to this meagre information, he had procured

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

sketch-maps of several canoe routes leading northward toward the Barren Lands. The most easterly of these routes commenced at a point on the north shore of Black Lake, and the description obtained of it was as follows: "Beginning at Black Lake, you make a long portage northward to a little lake, then cross five or six more small ones and a corresponding number of portages, and a large body of water called Wolverine Lake will be reached. Pass through this, and ascend a river flowing into it from the northward, until Active Man Lake is reached. This lake will take two days to cross, and at its northern extremity the Height of Land will be reached. Over this make a portage until another large lake of about equal size is entered. From the north end of this second large lake, a great river flows to the northward through a treeless country unknown to the Indians, but inhabited by savage Eskimos. Where the river empties into the sea we cannot tell, but it flows a great way to the northward."

From the description given, it appeared that this river must flow through the centre of the unexplored territory, and thence find its way either into the waters of Hudson Bay or into the Arctic Ocean. It was by this route we resolved to carry on the exploration, and, if possible, make our way through the Barren Lands.

One of the first and most important preparations for the journey was the procuring of suitable boats, inasmuch as portability, strength and carrying capacity were all essential qualities. These were obtained from the Peterboro' Canoe Company, who furnished us with two beautiful varnished cedar canoes, eighteen feet in length, and capable of carrying two thousand pounds each, while weighing only one hundred and twenty pounds. Arrangements had also been made to have a nineteen-foot basswood canoe, used during the previous summer, and two men in readiness at Fort McMurray on the Athabasca River.

Four other canoemen were chosen to complete the party,

## TORONTO TO ATHABASCA LANDING

three of them being Iroquois experts from Caughnawaga, Quebec. These three were brothers, named Pierre, Louis and Michel French. Pierre was a veteran canoeman, being as much at home in a boiling rapid as on the calmest water. For some years he had acted as ferryman at Caughnawaga, and only recently had made a reputation for himself by



Pierre. Flett. Corrigan. Michel. Louis.

SOME OF OUR MEN.

running the Lachine Rapids on Christmas day, out of sheer bravado. His brother Louis had won some distinction also through having accompanied Lord Wolseley as a voyageur on his Egyptian campaigns; while Michel, the youngest and smallest of the three, was known to be a good steady fellow, boasting of the same distinction as his brother Louis.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

The other man, a half-breed named John Flett, was engaged at Prince Albert, Saskatchewan. He was highly recommended, not so much as a canoe-man, as being an expert portager of great experience in northern travel, and also an Eskimo linguist.

The two men, James Corrigan and François Maurice, who through the kindness of Mr. Moberly, the officer of the Hudson's Bay Company at Isle-à-la-Crosse, were engaged to meet us with a third canoe at Fort McMurray, were also western half-breeds, trained in the use of the pack-strap as well as the paddle, and were a pair of fine strong fellows. Thus it was arranged to combine in our party the best skill both of canoe-men and portagers.

Our reasons for not employing Indians from Lake Athabasca were, that these natives had on nearly all previous expeditions proved to be unreliable. Such men as we had engaged, unlike these Indians, were free from any dread of the Eskimos, and as we would advance they would soon become entirely dependent on us as their guides. Besides, they were more accustomed to vigorous exertion at the paddle and on the portage than the local Indians, who are rather noted for their proficiency in taking life easy.

Next in importance to procuring good boats and canoe-men was the acquisition of a complete set of portable mathematical instruments, but in due time these, too, were obtained. The following is a list of them:—One sextant with folding mercurial horizon, one solar compass, two pocket compasses, two prismatic compasses, one fluid compass, two boat logs, two clinometers, one aneroid barometer, a pair of maximum and minimum thermometers, one pocket chronometer, three good watches, a pair of field-glasses, an aluminum binocular, and a small camera. These, though numerous, were not bulky, but they comprised a part of our outfit over which much care had to be exercised throughout the journey. A bill of necessary supplies was also carefully made out, and the order for

en-  
com-  
pert  
an

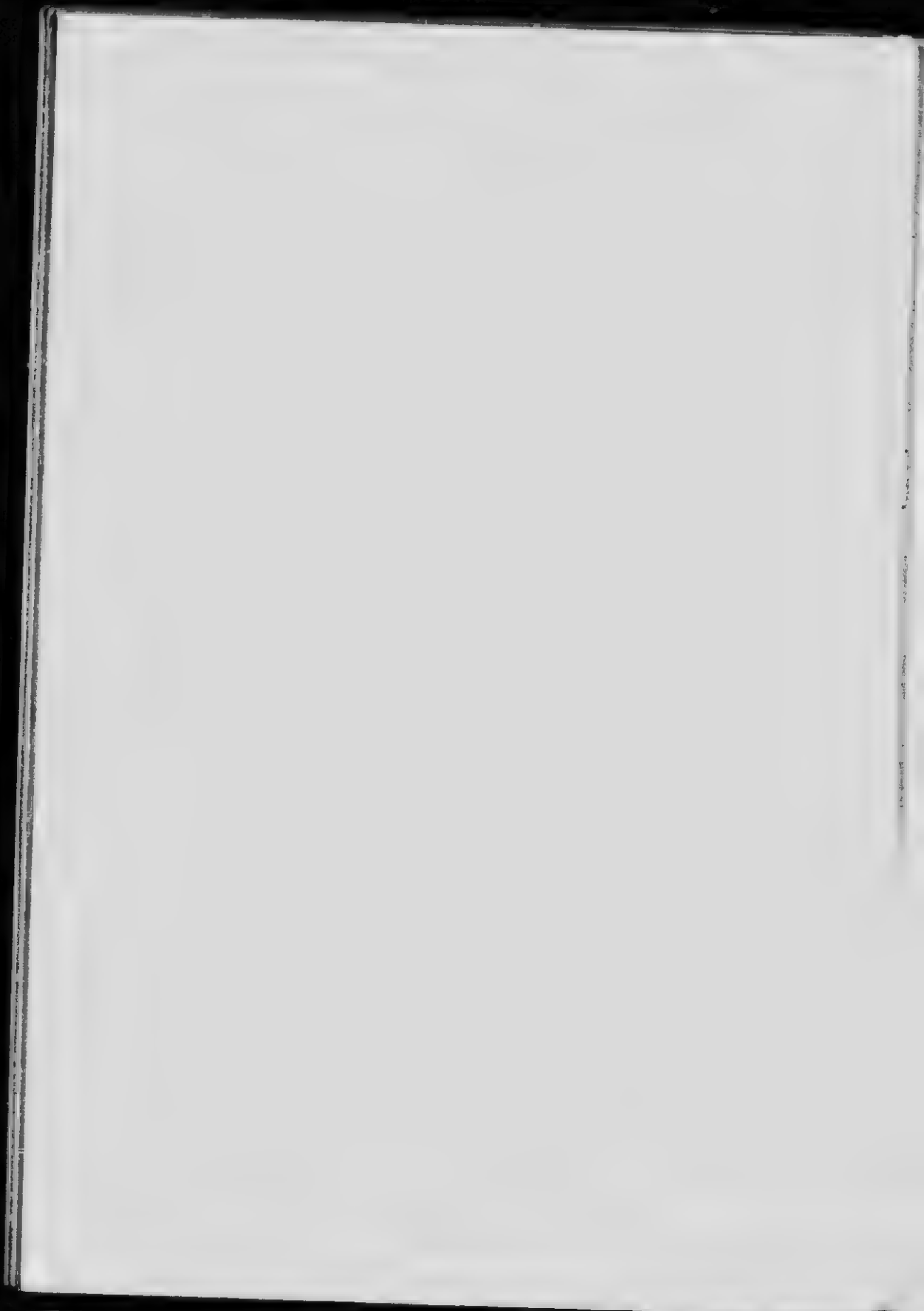
who  
ud-  
meet  
ern  
the  
was  
noe-

ha-  
ous  
and  
of  
be-  
ney  
nd  
ced

en  
cal  
he  
er-  
wo  
wo  
ad  
od  
nd  
y,  
re  
s-  
or



J. B. TYRRELL.





## TORONTO TO ATHABASCA LANDING

them forwarded to the Hudson's Bay Company at Edmonton, with instructions to have them freighted down the Athabasca River to Fort Chipewyan, on Lake Athabasca, as early as possible.

The above and a hundred and one other preparations having been completed, my brother and I bade farewell to our homes, and on the 16th of May boarded the North Bay evening express at Toronto. The journey was not begun without the stirring of tender emotions, for to me it meant separation, how long I knew not, from my young wife and baby boy five months old, and to my brother it meant separation from one too sacred in his eyes to mention here.

Once aboard the train we made ourselves as comfortable as possible for a five days' ride. I do not propose to weary my readers with a detailed account of the long run across continent by rail, as it is not reckoned a part of our real journey; in passing I will merely make the briefest reference to a few of the incidents by the way.

It was not until many delays between North Bay and Fort William on the Canadian Pacific Railway, owing chiefly to the disastrous floods of that year, which inundated the track for long distances, washed it out at several points and broke one of the railway bridges, that we arrived at Winnipeg, the capital of the Province of Manitoba and the future Chicago of Canada. Upon reaching the city it was found that our canoes, which had been shipped to Edmonton some time previously, had not yet passed through. After considerable telegraphing they were located, and it was found that they would arrive on the following day. In consequence of this and other business to be transacted with the Commissioner of the Hudson's Bay Company, we were obliged to remain here for a day. During our brief stay we were warmly greeted by many friends, and were most kindly entertained at Government House by the late Lieutenant-Governor, Sir John Schultz, and Lady Schultz, to whom we were indebted

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

for the contribution to our equipment of several articles of comfort.

The next day we bade our Winnipeg friends good-bye and took the C. P. R. train for the West. The route lay through



HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY TRADERS.

vast areas of the most magnificent agricultural country, for the most part level and unbroken, save by the innumerable and ancient but still deep trails of the buffalo. Little timber was observed, excepting in isolated patches and along the river valleys, the land being ready for the plough of the settler. Passing through many new but thriving towns and settlements by the way, we arrived early on the morning of the 22nd at the busy town of Calgary, pleasantly situated in the beautiful valley of the south branch of the Saskatchewan River, and just within view of the snow-clad peaks of the Rocky Mountains. From Calgary our way lay toward the north, *via* the Edmonton Branch of the C. P. R., and after a stay of only a few hours we were again hurrying onward. On the evening of the same day, in a teeming rain, we reached Edmonton, the northern terminus of the railway.

## TORONTO TO ATHABASCA LANDING

Edmonton, the capital of the new Province of Alberta, is situated on the north bank of the north branch of the Saskatchewan River, and at the time of our visit was in a flourishing condition. To-day many large business blocks have been erected, and property is selling at stiff prices. The city is noted for its lignite mines, which are worked to a considerable extent, and produce coal of very fair quality. The seams are practically of unlimited extent, and are very easily accessible in many places along the river banks. Gold is washed from the sands in paying quantities, while the city is surrounded by a fine agricultural and grazing country. Petroleum and natural gas have also been discovered in the vicinity, and the indications are that in the near future Edmonton will become a large city.

The town of Strathcona is situated on the south side of the river, and communication is afforded between the two places by means of a fine steel railway and traffic bridge. The Canadian Northern Railway has recently entered Edmonton from the east, and now affords a first-class main line connection with Winnipeg.

Upon enquiry we were gratified to find that the supplies and men, excepting the two who were to meet us later, had all arrived in safety. Our provisions, which were to be freighted down as far as Lake Athabasca by the Hudson's Bay Company, had not yet gone, but were already being baled up for shipment. The completion of this work, which was done under the supervision of my brother and myself, together with the making up of accounts and transaction of other business, occupied several days, but by



AN H. B. C. INTERPRETER

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

the morning of the 27th of May our entire outfit, loaded upon waggon, set off on the northward trail leading to Athabasca Landing, a small trading-post situated one hundred miles distant on the banks of the great Athabasca River.



A PIONEER OF THE NORTH.

*(Drawn from life by Arthur Heming.)*

Two days later, being Monday morning, my brother and I, accompanied by a driver only, started out in a light vehicle in rear of the outfit. The weather was showery and the trail in many places very soft. Occasionally deep mud-holes were encountered, bearing evidence of the recent struggles of the

## TORONTO TO ATHABASCA LANDING

teams of our advance party, but as we were travelling "light," we had little difficulty in making good progress. Later in the day the weather cleared, permitting us to enjoy a view of the beautiful country through which we were passing. As to the soil, it was chiefly a rich black loam, well covered, even at this early season, between the clumps of poplar scrub, by rich prairie grass. A few settlers were already in the field, and had just built or were building log cabins for themselves on one side or other of the trails. A little farther on our way the country became more hilly, the soil more sandy, and covered by the most beautiful park-like forests of jack-pine. Many of the trees were as much as fifteen inches in diameter, but the average size was about eight.

After passing through some miles of these woods we again emerged into more open country, wooded alternately in places by poplar, spruce and jack-pine. About nine o'clock that evening, when half-way to the Landing, we reached the Height of Land between the two great valleys of the Saskatchewan and Athabasca rivers. Here, upon a grassy spot, we made our first camp. As the night was clear no tents were pitched but, after partaking of some refreshment, each man rolled up in his blanket and lay down to sleep beneath the starry sky. We rested well, although our slumbers were somewhat broken by the fiendish yells of prairie wolves from the surrounding scrub, and the scarcely less diabolical screams of loons sporting on a pond close by. An effort was made to have the latter nuisance removed, but any one who has ever tried to shoot loons at night will better understand than I can describe the difficulties of such an undertaking.

About nine o'clock on the evening of the 30th of May we arrived at Athabasca Landing, only a few hours after the loads of supplies, which we were glad to find had all come through safely.



BLACKFOOT IN WAR-PAINT.



CREE WOMAN.



BLOOD BRAVE IN WAR-BONNET.



CREE DIGNITARY.



SARCEE BRAVE.

# INDIANS OF THE CANADIAN NORTH-WEST.

(Drawn from life by Arthur Heming.)

## CHAPTER II.

### DOWN THE ATHABASCA.

THE town of Athabasca Landing is picturesquely set in the deep and beautiful valley of one of the greatest rivers of America. Though not of imposing size, it is nevertheless an important station of the Hudson's Bay Company, being the point from which all supplies for the many northern trading-posts along the Athabasca and Mackenzie rivers are shipped, and the point at which the furs from these places are received. In order to provide for this shipping business, the Company has a large warehouse and wharf.

It is a fact, I think not very well known, that from this place up stream for about one hundred miles and down for fifteen hundred miles to the Arctic Ocean, this great waterway, excepting at two rapids, is regularly navigated by large river steamers, owned by the Hudson's Bay Company and employed in carrying supplies for their posts and the furs which are secured in trade. Because of these two impassable rapids the river is divided into three sections, necessitating the use of three steamers, one for each section. Goods are transported from one boat to the other over the greater part of the rapids by means of scows, but for a short distance, at the Grand Rapid, by means of a tramway built for the purpose.

As we had previously ascertained, the steamer *Athabasca* was due to leave the Landing on her down-stream trip on or about the 1st of June; so, taking advantage of the opportunity, we shipped the bulk of our stuff to Fort Chipewyan, situated about three hundred and fifty miles down the river on Lake Athabasca. Everything excepting the canoes and provisions sufficient to take us to Chipewyan was loaded upon

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

the steamer. Letters were written and sent back to Edmonton by the drivers, and on the evening of the last day of May we launched our handsome "Peterboroughs" in the great stream, and commenced our long canoe voyage.

The arrangement of the party was as follows: My brother occupied a central position in one canoe, and I a corresponding place in the other. As steersman he chose the eldest of the Iroquois, Pierre, with Michel as bowman. The remaining Iroquois, Louis, took the steering paddle of my canoe, and John, the western man, occupied the bow. Thus were our little crafts manned, each person, including my brother and myself, being provided with a broad maple paddle. Our loads being light, we were in good speeding condition. Just after launching we met some native Indians in their bark canoes, and by way of amusement and exhibition of speed paddled completely around them in the current, much to their amazement. Then with farewell salute, and the stroke of our paddles timed to the song of the canoe-men, we glided swiftly down the stream.

As the start had been made late in the afternoon, not many miles were passed before it became necessary to look for a camping place. The banks of the river, formed of boulder clay, were very high, and good landings were scarce. In places the mud on the shore was soft and deep, but about seven o'clock a landing was effected and camp pitched for the night. At this time only two small tents were used, an "A" tent for the canoe-men and a wall tent, affording a little more head room, for ourselves. The banks being well wooded with white and black poplar, spruce and birch, plenty of fuel was available. A fire was soon kindled and our evening meal prepared, in the cooking of which John was given the first opportunity of distinguishing himself. He was assisted by little Michel, who proved to be a very good hand. Having some bread and biscuits in stock, baking was not yet a necessity.



## DOWN THE ATHABASCA

The weather now being fair and cool, and the great pest of camp life, the mosquito, not having yet arrived, our experience at this time was most enjoyable. It was the season of spring, and the sweet perfume of the Balm of Gilead, so abundant in the valley of the Athabasca, permeated the air. The leaves on many of the trees were just opening, so that everywhere the woods presented a remarkable freshness and brilliancy of foliage. These were our environments at the commencement of the canoe voyage and at our first camp on



TRANQUIL WATERS.

the banks of the Athabasca. How different were they to be at the other end of the journey!

On the morning of the 1st of June camp was called early, and we continued on our way. As we glided down stream a succession of grand views passed, panorama-like, before us. The banks were high, towering in some places three, four or five hundred feet above the river; here abrupt and precipitous, consisting of cut banks of stratified clay; in other places

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

more receding, but by a gradual slope rising, beneath dense foliage, to an equal elevation.

At this season of the year the water being high and the current swift, we made good time, covering a distance of sixty miles for the first full day's travel. About noon on the 2nd, having reached a narrow part of the river, very remarkable massive walls of ice were found upon either bank, some distance above the water's edge. These walls were of irregular thickness, and from eight to ten feet in height; but the most striking feature about them was that they presented smooth vertical faces to the river, although built of blocks of every shape and shade from clear crystal to opaque mud. They extended thus more or less continuously for miles down the river, and had the appearance of great masonry dykes. The explanation of their existence is doubtless as follows: Earlier in the season the narrowness of the channel had caused the river ice to jam and greatly raised the water level. After a time, when the water had reached a certain height and much ice had been crowded up on the shores, the jam had given way and caused the water to rapidly lower to a considerable extent, leaving the ice grounded above a certain line. Thus the material for the wall was deposited, and the work of constructing and finishing the smooth vertical face was doubtless performed by the subsequent grinding of the passing jam, which continued to flow in the deeper channel. After the passing of the first freshet, and the formation of these great ice walls, the water had gradually lowered to the level at which we found it.

Late in the afternoon the first rapid of the trip was sighted, but the water being high we had no difficulty in running it. In the evening camp was made on a beautiful sandy beach. During supper-time we had a visit from an old Cree Indian, who came paddling up the river in a little bark canoe. Of course, he landed at our camp, for it is a principle strictly observed by every Indian to lose no opportunity of receiving

## DOWN THE ATHABASCA

hospitalities, and in accordance with his ideas of propriety, refreshments were given him. He accepted them as those of his race usually receive all favors, as no more than his right, and without a smile or the least visible expression of pleasure, seated himself by the fire to enjoy them.

On the following morning the great walls of ice, which we had been passing for miles, began to disappear as the channel of the river became wider. At about 9.30 we reached a place known as the Rapid of the Jolly Fool. It is said to have received its name from the fact that at one time an awkward canoeman lost his life by allowing his canoe to be smashed upon the most conspicuous rock in the rapid. We wasted no time examining it, as it was reported to be an easy one, but, keeping near the left bank, headed our little crafts into the rushing waters. We had descended only a short distance, and were turning a bend in the stream, when, a little ahead of us, my brother noticed moving objects on the shore. One of the men said they were wolves, while others maintained they were bears, but my brother, getting his rifle in readiness, terminated the discussion by demanding silence. As we swept swiftly down with the current, the objects were seen to be a moose deer and her calf. Having no fresh meat on hand, these new-found acquaintances were hailed as "well met." Not until our canoes had approached within about one hundred and fifty yards did the old moose, standing in the shallow water near the river bank, appear to notice us. Then, apparently apprehending danger, but without alarm, she turned toward the shore, and, followed by her calf, walked up the bank towards the woods. As she did so my brother made a fine shot from his canoe, wounding her in the hind-quarters. I then fired, but struck the clay bank above the animal's head, and in attempting to reload, the shell stuck in my rifle, making it impossible for me to fire again. Just as the moose was disappearing into the woods

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

my brother fired again, and inflicted another wound; but in spite of all away went the deer.

As our canoes were thrust ashore I succeeded in extracting the shell from my rifle, and leaving some of the men in charge of the canoes, my brother and I gave chase. The trail of blood was discovered on the leaves, but it led into such a jungle of fallen timber and thicket that it was no easy matter to follow. Scouts were sent out on either side, while with our rifles we followed the trail, running when we were permitted, jumping logs that came in the way, and clambering over or through windfalls that the moose had cleared at a bound. Presently through the leafy thicket we had a glimpse of our prey. "Bang!" went both rifles and away bounded the moose with two more slugs in her body.

We were now pretty badly winded, but being anxious to complete the work we had undertaken, the chase was kept up. We knew from the wounds already inflicted that the capture was only a matter of physical endurance on our part, and we were prepared to do our best. More than once the trail was lost in the windfalls and jungle, but at length loss of blood and exhaustion came to our assistance, and one final shot through the heart brought the noble beast with a thud to the ground. Nothing had been seen of the calf since the beginning of the hunt, but going back to the shore to get assistance, I found that the men had captured and made it a prisoner beside the canoes. Taking charge of the captive, I sent the men into the woods to skin the deer and "pack" the meat out to shore. The little calf, which I held by the ear, was very young, and not at all wild. Indeed, though I let go my hold, the little creature did not care to go away, but kept calling for its mother in such a pitiful way that it made me heartily sorry for having bereft it. After the space of an hour or so my brother and the men returned, well loaded with fresh meat and a fine moose-hide. The meat was placed in sacks and stowed away in the canoes, but the hide being heavy and of

## DOWN THE ATHABASCA

no value to us, was placed on a big stone in the sun to dry and await the ownership of the first Indian who should pass that way.

As it was now nearly noon, it was decided to take dinner before re-embarking, and while the cooks were devoting their attention to bannocks and moose-steaks, my brother and I



THE MOOSE CALF AND ITS CAPTORS.

were debating as to what we should do with the calf. We had not the heart to deliberately shoot it, but were unable to take it with us alive, as we would like to have done. Through a suggestion of one of the men a happy alternative was decided on. Other moose were doubtless in the vicinity, so that the calling of the calf would likely attract some of them, and in the event of this taking place it was said that the little

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

moose would attach itself to another female. With the hope that such kind fortune would befall it, my brother, after having taken its photograph, led it away by the ear into the shelter of the woods, and there left the little creature to its fate.

During the afternoon of the same day, the head of the Grand Rapid of the Athabasca, situated just 165 miles below



SCOWS AT THE HEAD OF GRAND RAPIDS.

the Landing, was reached. Here we met a detachment of the Mounted Police, in charge of Inspector Howard; and as it was late in the day, and Saturday evening, it was decided to pitch camp. The police camp was the only other one in the neighborhood, so the first question which suggested itself was: What possible duty could policemen find to perform in such



TROOPER R. N.-W. MOUNTED POLICE.  
(In winter uniform.)





## DOWN THE ATHABASCA

a wild, uninhabited place? The answer, however, was simple. The place, though without any settled habitation, is the scene of the transshipment of considerable freight on its way to the various trading-posts and mission stations of the great Mackenzie River District. The river steamer *Athabasca*, belonging to the Hudson's Bay Company, was now daily looked for with its load from the Landing. Mission scows, loaded with freight for Fort Chipewyan and other points, were expected, and free-traders' outfits were likely to arrive at any time. It was for the purpose of inspecting these cargoes and preventing liquor from being carried down and sold for furs to the Indians, that Inspector Howard and his detachment were stationed here.

From the Grand Rapid, down stream for about eighty miles to Fort McMurray, the river is not navigable for steamers, and so all goods have to be transported over this distance by scows built for the purpose. The head of the Grand Rapid is thus the northern steamboat terminus for the southern section of the river. The whole distance of eighty miles is not a continuous rapid, but eleven or twelve more or less impracticable sections occur in it, so that no great length of navigable water is found at any place. As its name suggests, the Grand Rapid is the main rapid of the river, and has a fall of seventy or eighty feet. This fall occurs mostly within a distance of half a mile, though the total length of the rapid is about four times that. The upper part is divided by a long narrow island into two channels, and it is through these comparatively narrow spaces that the cataract rushes so wildly. Above and below the island, the river may with great care be navigated by the loaded scows, but the water upon either side is so rough that goods cannot be passed down or up in safety. The method of transportation adopted is as follows: About a mile above the island, at the head of the rapid, the steamer *Athabasca* ties up to the shore. There she is met by a number of flat-bottomed boats or scows capable of carrying

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

about ten tons each, and to these the boat's cargo is transferred. When loaded the scows are piloted one by one to the head of the island in the middle of the river, where a rough wharf is built, and to it all goods are again transferred, whence they are carried to the lower end of the island by means of a tramway. The unloaded scows, securely held with



H. B. C. STEAMER "ATHABASCA" AT LANDING AT  
HEAD OF GRAND RAPIDS.

ropes by a force of men on the shore, and guided with poles by a crew on board, are then carefully lowered down stream to the foot of the island, where they again receive their loads. Accidents frequently happen in passing down the unloaded scows, for the channel (the eastern one always being chosen)

## DOWN THE ATHABASCA

is very rough and rocky. From the foot of the island in the Grand Rapid the scows are then floated down the river, with more or less difficulty, according to the height of water, through the long succession of rapids to Fort McMurray, where they are met by the second steamer, the *Girhamc*, which receives their freight and carries it down the river to Fort Chipewyan, on Lake Athabasca, and thence onward to Fort Smith, on Great Slave River, where a second transshipment has to be made over about sixteen miles of rapids. From the lower end of these rapids the steamer *Wrighty*, under the command of Captain Mills, takes charge of the cargo and delivers it at the various trading-posts along the banks of the Mackenzie River, for a distance of about twelve hundred miles, to the Arctic Ocean.

But to return to our camp at the head of the Grand Rapid. Inspector Howard and his men proved to be interesting companions. I soon discovered, to my surprise, that the Inspector was a cousin of my wife's, and that I had met him in former years in Toronto. Meeting with even so slight an acquaintance in such a place was indeed a pleasure; and in justice to the occasion a banquet, shall I call it, was given us, at which moose-steak and bear-chops cut a conspicuous figure. In conversation with the Inspector some information was obtained regarding the character of the rapids now before us, and all such was carefully noted, since none of our party had ever run the Athabasca. We had with us the reports of William Ogilvie, D.L.S., and Mr. McConnell, who had descended the river and published much valuable information regarding it, but even they could not altogether supply the place of a guide. We were putting great confidence in the skill of our Iroquois canoeemen at navigating rapids, and now in the succeeding eighty miles of the trip there would be ample opportunity of testing it.

On the morning following our arrival at the Grand Rapid, being the 4th of June, a number of mission scows, loaded with

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTIC OF CANADA

goods for Chipewyan and other mission stations, arrived. As they appeared, following each other in quick succession around a bend in the river, each boat manned by its wild-looking crew of half-naked Indians, all under the command of Schott, the big well-known river pilot, who is credited by Mr. Ogilvie with being the fastest dancer he has ever seen, they drew in towards the east bank, and one after the other made fast to the shore. The boats were at once boarded by



GRAND RAPIDS, ATHABASCA RIVER.

Inspector Howard and his men, and a careful search made for illegal consignments of "fire-water." Liquor in limited quantities is allowed to be taken into the country when accompanied by an official permit from the Lieut.-Governor of the Territories, but without this it is at once confiscated when found. Out of deference to those for whom these cargoes were consigned, I will not say whether a discovery was made on this occasion or not. When confiscations are made, how-

## DOWN THE ATHABASCA

ever, the find is, of course, always destroyed. The news of the arrival of the scows was welcomed by us, not because of anything they brought with them, but because we expected to obtain directions from Schott regarding the running of the many rapids in the river ahead, and arrange with him for the transport of the bulk of our canoe loads to Fort McMurray, below the rapids. After some consideration, rather less than most Indians require to take, these matters were arranged, and all but our instruments, tents, blankets and three or four days' provisions were handed over to Schott.

On the evening of the 4th, the steamer *Athabasca* also put in an appearance, and made fast to the shore a little above the scows. Grand Rapids was no longer an uninhabited wilderness, but had now become transformed into a scene of strange wild life. Large dark, savage-looking figures, many of them bare to the waist, and adorned with head-dresses of fox-tails or feathers, were everywhere to be seen. Some of them, notably those of the Chipewyan tribe, were the blackest and most savage-looking Indians I had ever seen. As it was already nearly night the last of them arrived

the steamer, the work of unshipping was left for the morning. In the dark woods the light of camp-fires began soon to appear, and around them the whole night long the Indians danced and gambled, at the same time keeping up their execrable drum music.

At daylight the next morning the overhauling of cargoes was commenced. One by one the scows were loosened and piloted down the middle of the rapid to the wharf at the head



ENGLISH-CHYPEWYAN  
HALF-BREED.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

of the island. Here they were unloaded, and after being lightened, were lowered down through the boiling waters, by means of lines from the shore and the assistance of poles on board, to again receive their loads at the foot of the island. Two or three scows were also similarly engaged in transporting the cargo of the steamer, of which our supplies formed part, and, much to our annoyance, there was considerable delay on account of having to repair the tramway across the island. We were informed that the *Grahame* could not now reach Chipewyan before the 20th of June, which would be ten days later than we had expected to be able to leave that place. However, we could only accept the inevitable, and try to make the best use of the time.

While Schott and his crews were thus engaged with their transport, our own men were not idle. They had been told that the rapid would have to be portaged, as no canoe man would venture to run it; but having walked down the shore and themselves examined the river, the Iroquois asked and obtained permission to run it by taking one canoe down at a time. Schott and his Indians thought them mad to try such a venture, but seeming to have every confidence in their own abilities, we determined to see what they could do. John gladly chose the work of portaging along the rough boulder shore and over precipitous rocks in preference to taking a paddle, but the three Iroquois took their places, Louis in the bow, Michel in the middle, and old Pierre in the stern. As the three daring fellows pushed off from the shore into the surging stream, those of us who gazed upon them did so with grave forebodings. They had started, and now there was nothing to do but go through or be smashed upon the rocks. Their speed soon attained that of an express train, while all about them the boiling waters were dashed into foam by the great rocks in the channel. Presently it appeared as if they were doomed to be dashed upon a long ugly breaker nearly in mid-stream; but no! with two or three lightning strokes



A TATTOOED CREE CHIEF.





## DOWN THE ATHABASCA

of their paddles the collision was averted. But in a moment they were in worse danger, for right ahead were two great rocks, over and around which the tumbling waters rushed wildly. Would they try the right side or the left? Only an instant was afforded for thought, but in that instant Pierre saw his only chance and took it—heading his canoe straight for the chute between the rocks. Should they swerve a foot to one side or the other the result would be fatal, but with unerring judgment and unflinching nerve they shot straight through the notch, and disappeared in the trough below. Rising buoyantly from the billows of foam and flying spray, they swept on with the rushing waters until, in a little eddy half-way down the rapid, they pulled in to the shore in safety. They were all well soaked by the spray and foam, but without concern or excitement returned for the second canoe. In taking this down a valise of stationery and photographic supplies, inadvertently allowed to remain in the canoe, got a rather serious wetting, but as soon as possible its contents were spread out upon the smooth, clean rocks to dry. Past the remainder of the rapid a portage was made and camp pitched at the foot. While our Iroquois were thus occupied, Schott and his men had been hard at work running down their scows, and had been unfortunate enough to get one of them stranded on a big flat rock in the middle of the rapid. Had it not been for the timely assistance of our party and the generalship of old Pierre, he would probably never have gotten it off. As it was, the accomplishment of the task occupied our united energies for several hours.

## CHAPTER III.

### *RUNNING THE RAPIDS.*

BEFORE leaving the Grand Rapid several good photographs of it were obtained, and then on the morning of the 7th of June, bidding adieu to Inspector Howard, and leaving our supplies in the freighters' hands, we started down the river for Fort McMurray. The first object of special interest passed was a natural gas flow, occurring on the left bank about fifteen miles below the rapid. At this place a considerable volume of gas is continually discharging, and may be seen bubbling up through the water over a considerable area, as well as escaping from rifts in the bank. The gas burns with a hot pale-blue flame, and is said to be used at times by boatmen for cooking purposes. Eight or ten miles farther down stream came the Brûle Rapids, the first of the long series, and though they might easily have been run, we did not try it, as my brother wished to remain on shore for some time to collect fossils. Meanwhile our stuff was portaged, and without difficulty the empty canoes run down to the foot of the rapids, where camp was made. Just at this place commence the wonderful tar sand-beds of the Athabasca, extending over an enormous area. These certainly present a very striking appearance. During warm weather, in many places, the faces of the river banks, from three to five hundred feet in height, present the appearance of running tar, and here and there tar wells are found, having been formed by the accumulation of the viscid tar in natural receptacles of the rock. Thus collected it has been commonly made use of by workmen in the calking of the scows on the river.\*

\*For further particulars regarding this most interesting locality, see the report of Mr. McConnell, published in 1893 by the Geological Survey of Canada.

## RUNNING THE RAPIDS

Sixteen miles farther down, the Boiler Rapid, so called from the fact that in 1882 a boiler intended for the steamer *Wrigley* was lost in it, was successfully run on the following day, and early in the afternoon the third rapid was reached. It attempting to run it on the left side, we found, after descending perhaps half-way, that there were too many rocks in the channel ahead, and therefore an effort was made to cross to the right side, which looked to be clearer. My brother's canoe, steered by old Pierre, avoided the rocks and



SHOOTING A RAPID

was taken successfully across, but mine was not so fortunate. In attempting to follow we struck a large rock in mid-channel, but happily the collision occurred in such a way that my canoe was not seriously damaged. It was merely whirled end for end in the current and almost filled with water, though not quite sufficiently to sink us. Leaving the two Indians to pull for the shore, I seized a tin kettle and lost no time in dashing out some of the water. After a sharp struggle we managed to land. Of course, all we had in the canoe—

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

instruments, blankets, provisions and clothing—was soaked, and it was therefore necessary to unload and turn everything out. My brother, seeing that something had happened, went ashore also, and with his men returned to assist us. The weather was fine, and our goods soon became sufficiently dry to allow us to re-embark.

An examination having been made of the rapid below, a short run was made down and then across to the opposite side, where we landed, and, because of the extreme shallowness of the channel and the many rocks that showed ominously above the surface, the canoes were lowered for the remaining half mile with the lines. The whole length of this rapid is perhaps a mile and a half, and it is sometimes designated as two, the Drowned and Middle rapids. Following these in quick succession, at intervals of from two to ten miles, we passed through the Long Rapids, which occasioned no difficulty; then the Crooked Rapids, well named from the fact that they occur at a very sharp U-shaped bend in the river, round which the current sweeps with great velocity. Just below this the Stony Rapid was passed, and then in turn the Little and Big cascades, both of which are formed by ledges of limestone rock, about three feet high, extending in more or less unbroken lines completely across the river.

At the Big Cascade a portage of a few yards had to be made, and below this, smooth water was found for a distance of eight or nine miles, until the head of the Mountain Rapid was reached. Judging from the name that this would be a large one, we decided to go ashore to reconnoitre. For a considerable distance the rapid was inspected, but no unusual difficulty appearing, we resolved to go ahead. About a mile farther on, a bend occurred in the rapid, and so high and steep were the banks that only with great difficulty could we see the river beyond. As far as the bend, though the current was swift, there appeared to be but few rocks near the left bank, and plenty of water. We therefore decided to go

## RUNNING THE RAPIDS

ashore at that point, if necessary, and examine the stream beyond.

As we proceeded the stream became fearfully swift and the waves increasingly heavy. At the speed we were making the bend was soon reached, but just beyond it another bluff point came in view. We would have gone ashore to make a further inspection, but this was impossible, as the banks were of perpendicular or even overhanging walls of limestone. So alarmingly swift was the current now becoming that we eagerly looked for some place on the bank where a landing might be made, but none could be seen. Retreat was equally impossible against the enormous strength of the river, and all we could do was to keep straight in the current. My brother's canoe, steered by old Pierre, being a little in advance of my own, gave me a good opportunity of seeing the fearful race we were running. Suspicions of danger were already aroused, and the outcome was not long deferred. As we were rounding the bluff, old Pierre suddenly stood up from his seat in the stern, and in another instant we likewise were gazing at what looked like the end of the river. Right before us there extended a perpendicular fall. We had no time for reflection, but keeping straight with the current, and throwing ourselves back in the canoes in order to lighten the bows, we braced ourselves for the plunge, and in a moment were lost to sight in the foaming waters below. But only for an instant. Our light cedars, though partly filled by the foam and spray, rose buoyantly on the waves, and again we breathed freely. It was most fortunate for us that the canoes were not loaded, for had they been they never would have floated after that plunge, but would have disappeared like lead in the billows. We afterwards found we had taken the rapid in the very worst spot, and that near the right side of the river we might have made the descent free of danger. Without a guide, however, such mistakes will sometimes occur in spite of every precaution.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

Poor John, my bowman, was badly unstrung as a result of this adventure, and declared that he did not want to shoot any more waterfalls; and for that matter, others of us were of much the same mind. One more small rapid, the Moberly, completed the series, and then for a few miles we enjoyed calm water until, toward evening, we arrived at Fort McMurray.



STORE, FORT MCMURRAY.

This settlement, then containing five small log buildings—a warehouse, a store, the traders' dwelling and two Indian houses—is situated on a cleared tongue of land formed by the junction of the Clear Water River with the Athabasca, and is about two hundred and fifty miles below the Landing. The site of the post is at an elevation of forty or fifty feet above the water, but in the immediate background, and on both banks of the river, the ground rises abruptly, and is covered by a thick growth of poplar, spruce and birch trees. At the time of our arrival two parties of Indians, one Cree and the other Chipewyan, occupying in all a dozen or more

## RUNNING THE RAPIDS

lodges, were encamped at the place, and were to be seen in groups here and there idly putting in the time, while everywhere their mangy canines skulked and prowled about, seeking what they might devour—old moccasins, pack-straps, etc., apparently being their favorite dainties.

Naturally, our first inquiry upon arriving at the Fort was whether or not our two men and canoe from Isle-à-la-Crosse had arrived; but the appearance of an upturned "Peterborough" on the shore soon answered the question, and a few minutes later two stout half-breeds made their appearance, and informed us they were the men who had been sent by Mr. Moberly to meet us. My brother had expected two men who had accompanied him on his trip of the previous year, but they having been unable to come, these two, Jim Corrigan and François Maurice, had been engaged in their stead. Jim was a man of middle age, tall and of muscular frame; while his companion was probably not more than twenty years of age, and in appearance rather short and of heavy build. Jim spoke English fairly well, though Cree was his tongue; but François, while speaking only very broken English, could converse in French, Cree and Chipewyan, his knowledge of the last making him subsequently very useful as an interpreter.

Our party, consisting of eight men, with three canoes, was now complete, and thus assembled, the cleanest available ground remote from Indian lodges was chosen, and camp pitched to await the arrival of the four hundred pounds of supplies left with Schott at Grand Rapid. We soon found we were not the only ones waiting, and that anxiously, for the arrival of the scows from the south. The entire population then at Fort McMurray was in a state of famine. Supplies at the post, having been insufficient for the demand, had become exhausted, and the Indians who had come in to barter their furs were thus far unable to obtain food in exchange, and were obliged, with their families, to subsist upon the few

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

rabbits that might be caught in the woods. We were also out of supplies, but now the scows were hourly expected. Expectations, however, afforded poor satisfaction to hungry stomachs, and no less than five days passed before these materialized. In the meantime, though we were not entirely without food ourselves, some of the natives suffered much distress. At one Cree camp visited I witnessed a most pitiable sight. There was the whole family of seven or eight



AN INDIAN CAMP.

persons seated on the ground about their smoking camp-fire, but without one morsel of food, while children, three or four years old, were trying to satisfy their cravings at the mother's breast. We had no food to give them, but gladdened their hearts by handing around some pieces of tobacco, of which all Indians, if not all savages, are passionately fond.

In addition to the unpleasantness created by lack of provisions, our stay at Fort McMurray was attended with extremely wet weather, which made it necessary to remain in



## RUNNING THE RAPIDS

camp most of the time, and to wade through no end of mud whenever we ventured out.

On the evening of the 14th the long-looked-for scows with the supplies arrived. It will readily be imagined we were not long in getting out the provisions and making ready a supper more in keeping with our appetites than the meagre meals with which we had for several days been forced to content ourselves. The cause of delay, as Schott informed



STEAMER "GRAHAME."

us, was the grounding of some of the boats in one of the rapids, in consequence of which the cargoes had to be removed by his men and carried on their shoulders to the shore, the boats then freed, lowered past the obstruction and reloaded. Such work necessarily entails considerable delay and is of a slavish character, as all hands have to work in the ice-cold water for hours together.

Receiving again our four hundred pounds of supplies from

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

Schott, we lost no more time at Fort McMurray, but at seven o'clock next morning the little expedition, consisting now of eight men and three canoes, pushed out into the river, and, with a parting salute, sped away with the current, which being swift, and our canoeemen fresh, enabled us in a short time to place many miles between us and the Fort. At five o'clock in the evening, having then descended the river a distance of about sixty miles, we were delighted to meet the steamer *Grahame* on her up-stream trip from Fort Chipewyan to McMurray to receive the goods brought down the rapids by the scows. The steamer, being in charge of Dr. McKay, the Hudson's Bay Company's officer from Chipewyan, who had been informed of our expedition, was at once brought to a stand in the river, and we were kindly invited on board. When I commenced to clamber up the steamer's deck, whose hand should be offered to assist me but that of an old friend and fellow-shipmate for two years in Hudson Straits—Mr. J. W. Mills. The acquaintance of Dr. McKay and of the Bishop of Athabasca, who happened to be on board, was also made, and with these genial companions an hour quickly and very pleasantly passed. Mr. Mills, who was attired in the uniform of a steamboat captain, had lately been appointed to the command of the steamer *Wrigley*, plying on the lower section of the river, below Fort Smith, to which place he was to be taken by the *Grahame* on her return trip from Fort McMurray. Before parting company, the Doctor promised to meet us again at Chipewyan on the 19th, and after this short meeting, and many parting good wishes, we resumed our separate ways.

Notwithstanding the hour's delay and the fact that rain fell all day, we made the very good run of seventy-two miles. As we swept along with the winding river the most beautiful and varied scenes were continually presented. The banks, though not so high as above Fort McMurray, were bold and thickly clad with spruce and poplar woods. Taking advan-

## RUNNING THE RAPIDS

tage of the discovery of some straight spruce saplings, we landed as night approached, and a number of our men were sent to select a few for the purpose of making good tent-poles to take the place of rough ones we had been using. Besides spruce and other varieties of timber, balsam trees, the last seen on the northward journey, were found at this camp.

On the morning of the 16th, though the weather continued showery and a strong head wind had set in, we were early



ASHORE FOR LUNCH.

on our way, for we were anxious to reach Chipewyan a day or two before the return of the *Grahame*, that we might rate our chronometer and make all necessary preparations for a good-bye to the outermost borders of civilization. In descending the Athabasca we were making no survey of the course, nor any continuous examination of the geological features of the district, but were chiefly concerned in getting down to Chipewyan, where we were to receive our full loads of supplies, and from which place our work was really to begin. Despite the unpleasantness of the weather, therefore, our

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

canoes were kept in the stream and all hands at the paddles, and by nightfall another stretch of about sixty miles was covered. We had now reached the low, flat country at the delta of the river, where its waters break into many channels, but still a strong current was running, and this we were glad to find continued until within a distance of six or eight miles from the lake. Some parts of the river were much obstructed by driftwood grounded upon shoals; the banks, too, were low and marshy, and landing-places difficult to find. Several flocks of wild geese were seen, but none secured.

During the morning of the 17th some gun-shots were heard not far distant across the grassy marsh, and turning our canoes in that direction we soon met several bark canoes manned by Chipewyan Indian hunters. François, being the only man in our party who could understand or talk with them, was much in demand, and he was instructed to ask them the shortest way through the delta towards Chipewyan. Indian-like, he entered into conversation with the strangers for ten minutes or so (doubtless chiefly about their wives and daughters), and then with a wave of the hand said, "We go dis way." So that way we went, and by three o'clock in the afternoon found ourselves in the open waters of Lake Athabasca. Two hours later we had crossed the end of the lake and drawn up our canoes on the rocky shore in front of Fort Chipewyan. It was Saturday evening, and the distance travelled thus far since launching the canoes was, according to Mr. Ogilvie, 430 miles. As we were already aware, Dr. McKay, the Hudson's Bay Company's agent, was not at the Fort, but we were received by the assistant trader, Pierre Mercredie, a half-breed, and shown to a camping-ground in front of the Fort, or otherwise on Main Street of the town. During the evening we had the pleasure of meeting Mrs. McKay and her children, and also Mr. Russell, an American naturalist, who was sojourning at this place on his way down the Mackenzie River.

## CHAPTER IV.

### *CHIPEWYAN TO BLACK LAKE.*

FORT CHIPEWYAN is an old and important trading-post of the Hudson's Bay Company. Before many of our Canadian and American cities came into existence, Chipewyan was a noted fur-trading centre. From here—or rather from a former site of the post, a few miles distant—Alexander Mackenzie (afterwards Sir Alexander) started, in 1789, on his famous journey down the great river which now bears his name. About the beginning of the present century the post was moved to the position it now occupies on the rocky northern shore of the west end of the lake.

The Fort consists of a long row of eighteen or twenty detached log buildings, chiefly servants' houses, connected by a high, strong wooden fence or wall, so as to present an unbroken front to the water; behind which, in a sort of court, are situated the Factor's dwelling and two or three other good-sized log buildings. At the west end of the row stands an Episcopal Mission church and the Mission house, which at the time of our visit was occupied by Bishop Young, the see of whose diocese was formerly here, but since removed to Fort Vermilion, some 270 miles distant on the Peace River. Within easy sight, a short distance farther west, across a little bay, the Roman Catholic Mission church and various buildings connected therewith are situated. This mission is a large and flourishing one, and is the see of the Roman Catholic Diocese of Athabasca. All the buildings of Chipewyan are neatly whitewashed, so that, particularly from the front, it presents a most striking appearance. At the back

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

of the Fort, between the rocky hills, plenty of small timber for house-building and firewood is found, and over at the Catholic Mission a little farm is cultivated, and many luxuries in the way of root vegetables obtained from it.

The staple food, however, for both man and dogs (which latter are important members of the community) is fish, several varieties of which are caught in abundance in the lake



FORT CHIPEWYAN, LAKE ATHABASCA.

close at hand. One or two whitefish, according to size, is the usual daily allowance for a dog.

In the north the dog takes the place which the horse occupies in the south, and it is a very interesting sight to see the canine population of the town, perhaps thirty or forty in all, receiving their daily meal. They are called together by the ringing of a large bell, erected for the purpose at all Hudson's Bay Company posts. At the first stroke all dogs within

## CHIPEWYAN TO BLACK LAKE

reach of the sound spring to their feet and scamper off to the feeding place, where they find a man in charge of their rations. Forming round in a circle, each dog waits for the portion thrown to him, which he at once trots away with to enjoy in some quiet retreat. Occasional snarls and fights take place, but it is astonishing to see how orderly Chipewyan dogs are able to conduct themselves at a common mess.

The day after our arrival at the Fort being Sunday, we had our last opportunity for several months of attending Divine service, and were privileged to listen to an excellent sermon preached by His Lordship Bishop Young. Some of our men, being Roman Catholics, were able to avail themselves of the opportunity of attending mass as well, and of receiving a parting blessing from the priest.

The next day being the 19th, the date on which Dr. McKay had promised to rejoin us at the Fort, his return with the *Grahame* was eagerly looked for. We had made all the preparations for departure that could be made until he and our supplies should arrive. During the afternoon a strong breeze sprang up from the east, raising a heavy sea, and it was not until sunset that the belated steamer tied up to the wharf. She had had a rough passage, so rough that the Doctor declared it was the last time he would ever be a passenger on her in such water; a not unwise resolution, for the steamer, top-heavy and drawing only about three feet of water, was not unlikely to roll over in rough weather.

With the return of the Doctor, Captain Mills and the captain of the *Grahame*, we now formed a merry party, and spent a pleasant evening at the Doctor's house. Captain Mills and I talked over old-time adventures in Hudson Straits, and recalled many incidents from our mutual experiences in the North in bygone days. But as the Doctor had determined to leave again with the steamer on the following day for the Great Slave Lake river posts, there was no time to be lost in social pleasures. In compliance with my brother's request,

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

sent by letter some months previously, Dr. McKay had engaged the best available Indian guide to accompany us from this place through Lake Athabasca and as far beyond as he knew the country. With the success of this arrangement we were greatly pleased, as it was desirable that as little time as possible should be lost in seeking trails and river routes. The guide's name was Moberly—a Christian name, though borne by a full-blooded Chipewyan Indian, who, before we were through with him, proved himself to be anything but a Christian. He was acquainted with our route for about one hundred miles to the northward from Black Lake, and even in this distance his services, we thought, would likely save us several days.

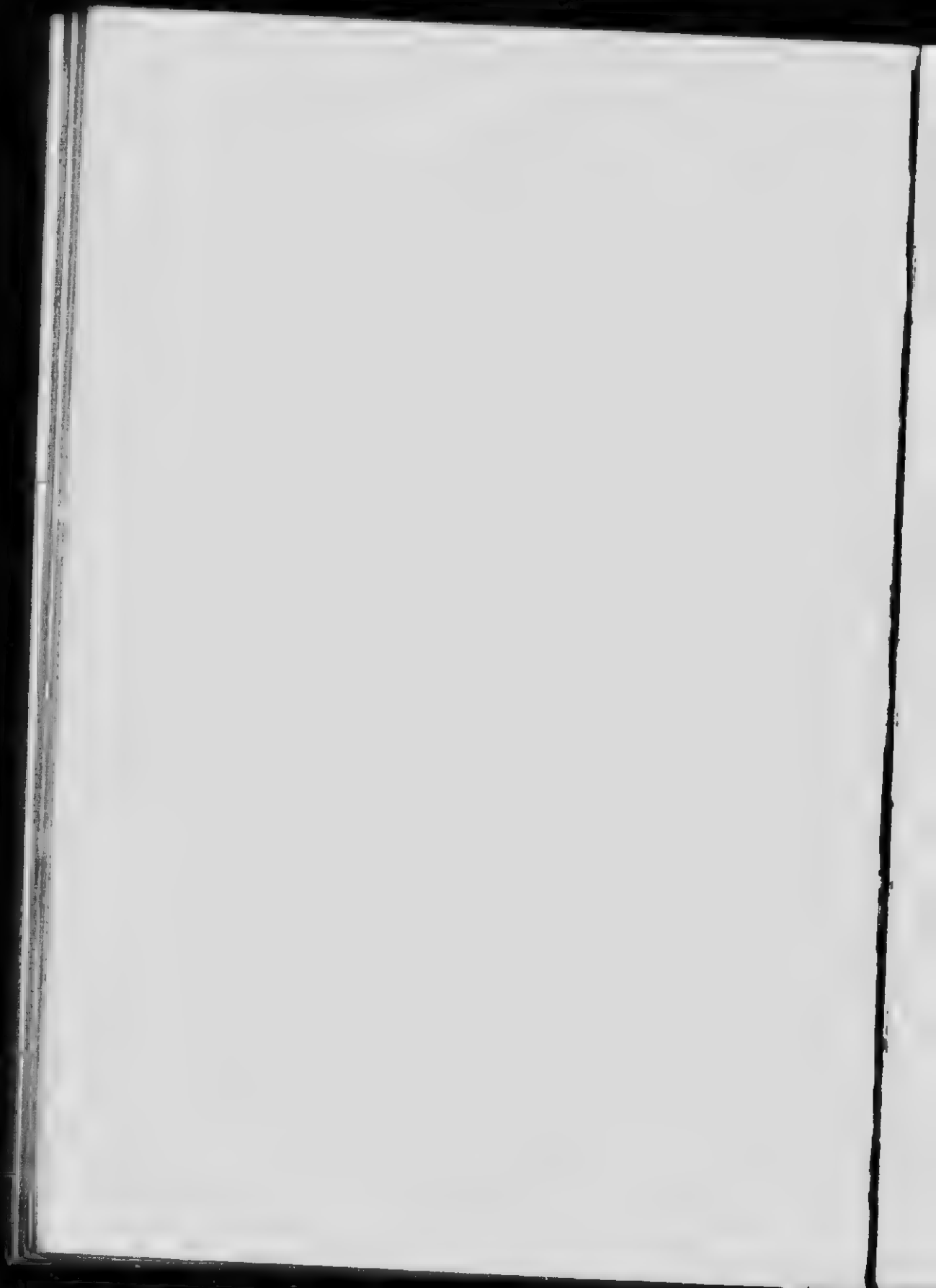
Next morning the Fort was a scene of hurry and bustle. Goods were landed from the steamer, cordwood taken on board, and much other business attended to. I took charge of our own supplies, and checked each piece as it was brought ashore. Our chest of tea was the only article that had suffered from the effects of frequent transshipment. It had been broken open and a few pounds lost, but the balance—about sixty pounds—had been gathered up and put in a flour bag. Before noon everything was safely landed on the shore, and it formed a miscellaneous pile of no small extent. Following is a list of the articles: Bacon, axes, flour, matches, oatmeal, alcohol, tin kettles, evaporated apples, apricots, salt, sugar, frying-pans, dutch oven, rice, pepper, mustard, files, jam, tobacco, hard tack, candles, geological hammers, baking powder, pain killer, knives, forks, canned beef—fresh and corned—tin dishes, tarpaulins and waterproof sacks. Besides the above, there were our tents, bags of dunnage, mathematical instruments, rifles, and a box of ammunition. The total weight of all this outfit amounted at the time to about four thousand pounds.

A sail-boat which my brother had used in 1892, and which was in good condition, rode at anchor before the Fort, and



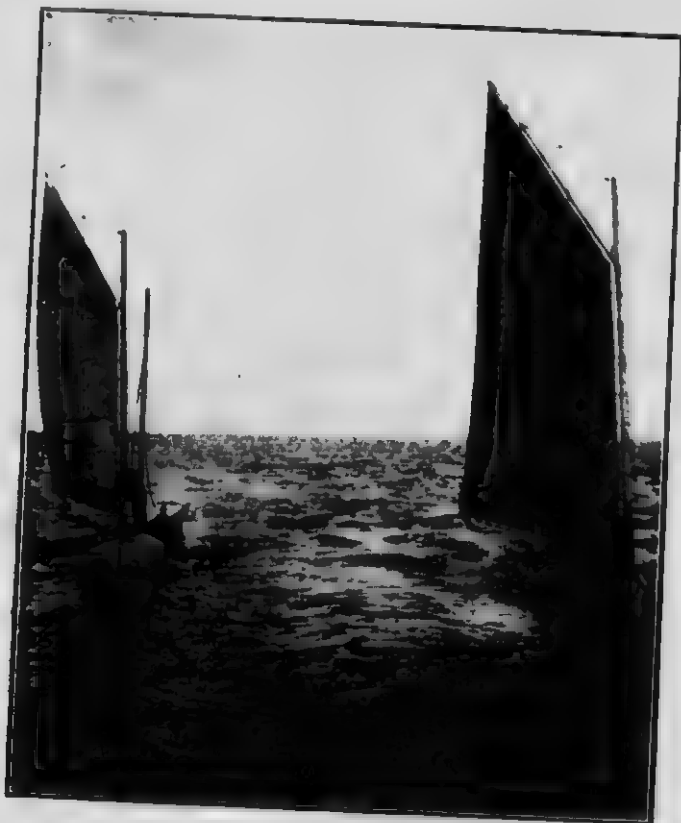


LANDING GOODS FROM THE STEAMER.



## CHIPEWYAN TO BLACK LAKE

for a time it was thought we would have to make use of this as far as the east end of the lake to carry all our stuff. Moberly, the guide, particularly urged the necessity of taking



SAILBOATS ON LAKE ATHABASCA.

the big boat, for his home was at the east end of the lake, and he had a lot of stuff for which he wished to arrange a transport; but as we were not on a freighting tour for his benefit, and as we found by trial that everything could be

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

carried nicely in the canoes, we decided to take them only. At this the guide became sulky, and thought he would not go. His wife and two daughters, who were to accompany him as far as their home, tried to persuade him, but, Indian-like, he would not promise to do one thing or the other. At last we told him to go where he chose, as we were in no way dependent on him, but knew our own way well enough.

As arranged, the *Grahame* steamed away during the afternoon for the Great Slave River, with Dr. McKay, Captain Mills and Bishop Young on board; but our own start was deferred until the next morning, and in the meantime home letters were written, for a packet was to go south from here about the 16th of July.

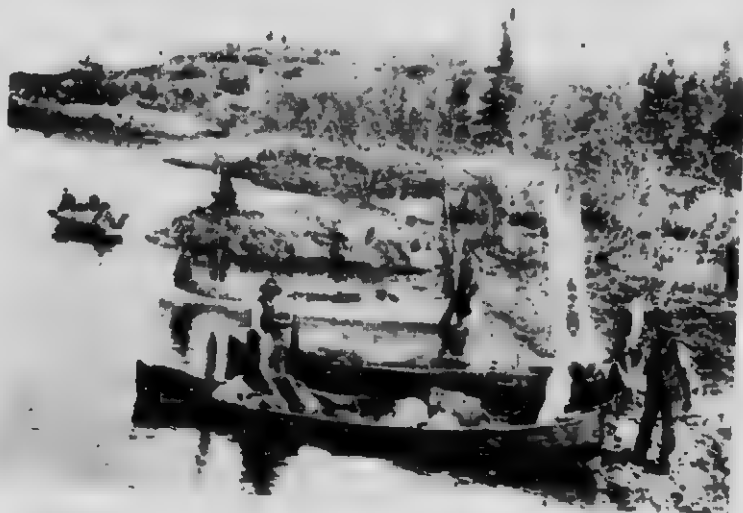
On the morning of the 21st of June, the whole outfit being snugly stowed in the three canoes, our party set out on an easterly course up the lake. Old Moberly was also on hand with his family and big bark canoe. The morning was beautifully fair and calm; all nature seemed to be smiling. But soon the smile became a frown. The east wind, as if aroused by our paddles, began to stir itself, and before long made things unpleasant enough, coming not alone but with clouds of mist and rain. Though we could make but slow progress, we persisted in travelling until 9.30 p.m., when, having made about twenty-four knots, we pitched camp in a little sandy bay, worthy to be remembered because of the swarms of mosquitos which greeted us on landing. We had been reminded of the existence of these creatures at Chipewyan and at earlier camps, but here it was a question of the survival of the fittest. Mosquito nets, already fixed to the hats, had to be drawn down and tightly closed, and mosquito oil or grease smeared over our hands.

The north shore of the lake, bold and rocky of aspect, consists chiefly of Laurentian gneiss, and is of little geological interest save at a few points, which will be spoken of as they are reached. The south shore, which was examined

## CHIPEWYAN TO BLACK LAKE

by my brother in 1892, was found to be of entirely different character—low and flat—and its rocks cretaceous sandstones. The chief varieties of timber observed as we passed along were spruce, white poplar and birch, and with these, though of small size, the country was fairly well covered.

Our second day on the lake was even less successful than the first, for though we made a start in the morning, we were



LANDING ON NORTH SHORE OF LAKE ATHABASCA.

soon obliged to put to shore by reason of the roughness of the water and a strong head-wind. At noon we succeeded in getting our latitude, which was  $59^{\circ} 6' 32''$  N.

About six o'clock that evening, shortly after our second launch, we met a party of Indians in their bark canoes, sailing with hoisted blankets before the wind. There were quite a number of them, and as they bore down towards us they presented a picturesque and animated scene. Moberly was

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

some distance in the rear, but François was on hand to interpret, and as we met, a halt was made. The first and most natural question asked by the Indians was, "Where are you going?" "To h—," was François' prompt but rather startling reply. In order that we might have an opportunity of securing information about the country (not that to which François had alluded, however), it was decided that we should all go ashore and "make tea"; so our course was shaped for the nearest beach, a mile or so away. Upon landing we found that some of these Indians were men of whom Dr. McKay had spoken as being shrewd, intelligent fellows. From one old hunter in particular, named Sharlo, we obtained interesting sketch-maps of canoe routes leading northward from Lake Athabasca. Of course, tea and tobacco had been served out before such information was sought, for no man of experience would think of approaching an Indian for the purpose of obtaining a favor without first having conferred one. Our object accomplished, canoes were again launched and the struggle with the east wind was renewed. Though we travelled until 10.30 at night, we made only 16.4 knots during the day, as indicated by the boat's log; and then, in the mouth of the Fishing River, we found a sheltered nook in the thick woods for a camping ground.

The next day, the high wind continuing and rain falling freely, the lake was too rough for us to venture out. A collection of all the many varieties of plants occurring in the vicinity was carefully made. Nets were set out, and some fine fish taken; trolls were also used with fair success, and with my revolver, much to the amusement of the party, I shot and killed, some distance under water, a fine large pike. A few geese were seen also, but none could be secured.

On the following morning, though it was still raining, the wind had fallen, and we were able to go ahead. Because of the wet we had great difficulty in using our surveying instruments and in making our field-notes. During the forenoon,

## CHIPLEWYAN TO BLACK LAKE

while ashore at Cypress Point—a long sandy beach timbered with jack-pine woods extending a mile or more out into the lake—we observed a sail not far ahead. A sail-boat in these waters was an unusual sight, but on this occasion we were able to guess its meaning. It was Mr. Reed with his party returning from Fort Fond-du-Lac (now a small winter post only) to Chipewyan with the last winter's trade. We had been told we would likely meet him on the lake, and here he



A CLUMP OF JACK-PINES.

came before the breeze in his big York boat. As he approached and sighted us, he made in to where we were, and ran his boat on the sandy beach. In the party, besides Mr. Reed, the young trader, were two French priests returning from their season's labor among the Indians. One of them, now an old man, had spent the greater part of his life in mission work in this district, and was about laying down his commission, to be succeeded by his younger companion. As it was nearly noon, our men were instructed, though it was

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

raining heavily, to kindle a fire and prepare lunch for the party. Beneath some thick fir-trees a shelter was found, and the tea being made and lunch laid out on the ground, we all seated ourselves about, and spent a delightful half-hour together. But to us every hour was precious, and without further delay we wished each other God-speed, and continued our courses. By nightfall the log-reading showed our day's



A YORK BOAT UNDER SAIL.

travel to be thirty-two knots, equivalent to about thirty-seven miles. So far we had been fortunate in finding comfortable camping grounds. With a guide who knew the shore we should be expected to do so, but with a guide such as ours, who was commonly several miles behind, his connection with the party made little difference, excepting in the consumption of "grub."

Three more days passed, and despite the unfavorable weather, seventy miles of shore-line were surveyed. Then a



## CHYPEWYAN TO BLACK LAKE

discovery of some interest was made. Just east of the Beaver Hills we found a veritable mountain of iron ore, of the kind known as hematite. Coal to smelt it is not found in the vicinity, though there is plenty of wood in the forest. The shore of this part of the lake was very much obscured by islands, upon the slopes of which the remains of the last winter's snowbanks could still be seen.

We made an early start in the morning of the 28th, breaking camp at five o'clock. But before we had gone any distance a fog settled over the lake so dense that we could not see ten yards from the canoes. For some time we groped along in the darkness, every little while finding our way obstructed by the rocky wall of some island or point of land, and finally, meeting with a seemingly endless shore, we were obliged to wait for the weather to clear. All land was led and climbed the precipitous bank, with a view to discovering something about the locality, but all was obscurity. Toward noon the fog lifted, and we were able to make out our position, which was on the mainland, north of Old Man Island. On this point we observed a solitary grave, and, near by, the remains of an old log house. As to who had been the occupant of this solitary hut, or whose remains rested in the lonely grave, we knew not, but their appearance on this uninhabited shore made a realistic picture of desolation and sadness.

On the morning of the 29th of June, high west winds and heavy rain were again the order of the day, but venturing out, we made a fast run before the wind and reached the Fort in a heavy sea. Fond-du-Lac is a fort only in name, and consists in all of two or three small log shanties and a little log mission church, situated on a bare exposed sandy shore, without any shelter from the fierce winter storms which hold high carnival in this country six or seven months of the year. Having already met the white residents of Fond-du-Lac on the lake, we found most of their houses, few though they were, locked up. Two or three Indians and their families

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

were living at the place, and with one of them letters were left, with a hope that they might be taken safely to Chipewyan, and thence forwarded by the Hudson's Bay Company's autumn packet to Edmonton. This was undoubtedly the last chance, though only a chance, of sending any news to our friends, until we should return to civilization.

From Fond-du-Lac eastward the lake is quite narrow,



A YORK BOAT AT A RIVER LANDING.

having much the appearance of a broad river. It is only five miles in width, but extends a distance of fifty miles in this direction. On the south shore could be seen a large group of Indian lodges, and at this camp was the home of our guide. It was here that his family were to be left, so we all went across to the Indians' encampment. Moberly now

## CHUPEWYAN TO BLACK LAKE

appeared to be very indifferent as to whether or not he should go any farther with us. Indeed he seemed more inclined to remain with his friends, for to accompany us meant more exertion for him than he was fond of. Various reasons were given why he must remain at this place; but after much parleying, and the offer of liberal inducements, he promised to secure a companion canoeeman and follow our track in the morning. With this understanding we parted, and proceeded along the south shore until evening, when, finding an inviting camping-ground in the open jack-pine woods, we went ashore, where the cooks soon prepared supper—with us the principal meal of the day.

So far our fare had been exceedingly good, for it had been the policy to dispose of luxuries as soon as possible, in order to reduce the weight of the loads on the portages. Our limited stock of canned fruits was, therefore, used with a free hand at first.

June closed with a bright, clear and unusually calm day, which was also marked by the absence of mosquitos and black flies. Under these unusual circumstances, at noon-hour, an event occurred which was seldom repeated during the remainder of our journey, viz., the taking of a bath.

Just as lunch was ready we were again joined by Moberly and his companion, an old Indian named Bovia. We were glad, and not a little surprised, to see them, for we had a suspicion that the guide had no serious intention of keeping his promise. During the afternoon, however, as before, his canoe lagged far behind, not so much because of his inability to keep up with us as because of his serene indifference and laziness. The paddles used by him and his comrade were like spoons as compared with our broad blades, and the position of old Bovia, as he pulled with one elbow resting on the gunwale of his canoe, was most amusing. By this way of travelling it was very evident that the guides were going to be a drag rather than a help to us, so it was resolved that

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

before proceeding farther a definite understanding must be arrived at.

Beside the evening camp-fire, accordingly, the matter was broached to the Indians. They were told plainly that if they were to continue with us they would be required to go in advance and show us the way as far as they knew the route, and further, that they would be expected to assist in portaging our stuff whenever that might become necessary. In consideration of this, as already agreed upon, they were to receive their board and eighty skins (\$40.00) per month upon their return to Chipewyan. This arrangement was accepted as being satisfactory to them, and it was hoped that it might result satisfactorily to ourselves.

During the morning of the 1<sup>st</sup> of July, with a little Union Jack flying at the bow of my canoe, we arrived at the east end of the lake, and concluded a traverse, since leaving Chipewyan, of 210 miles. Here, at the extremity of the lake, we found several Indian families living, not as is usual, in their "tepees" or skin-covered lodges, but in substantial log houses. One of these, we learned, was the property of our brave Moberly, and in front of it he and old Bovia deliberately went ashore, drew up their canoe, and seated themselves upon the ground beside some friends.

Their action at once struck us as suspicious, but presently they made an open demand for a division of our bacon, flour, tea and tobacco. Some pieces of tobacco and a small quantity of tea had already been given, but any further distribution of our supplies was declined. At this Moberly feigned to become very angry, and said he would go with us no farther; and not another foot would he go. From the first his quibbling, unreliable manner, characteristic of the tribe to which he belonged, had been most unsatisfactory, and now having received board for himself and his family in journeying homeward, besides a month's pay in advance, he had resolved to desert us. There was no use in trying to force him

## CHYPEWYAN TO BLACK LAKE

to continue with us against his inclinations, nor could we gain anything by punishing him for his deception, though punishment he richly deserved. He was given one last opportunity of deciding to go with us, but still refusing, we parted company with him without wasting strong language which he would not have understood.

With our three canoes only, we thereupon commenced the ascent of what had been named the Stone River, the outlet of Black Lake. We had gone but a short distance when we



INDIAN LOG HOUSE.

were met by a canoe and four Indians coming down with the current. They appeared to be delighted to see us, and turning back accompanied us to the first rapid, where a short portage had to be made. In this they willingly assisted us, and for their labor were liberally rewarded with tea, tobacco and a few lumps of sugar. They volunteered to return on the following day and assist us in crossing some longer portages, the first of which we would meet before nightfall. Of this offer we were quite glad, and promised good pay for the work as inducement for them to keep the engagement, but in the meantime they went down to the log

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

houses where we had left our guides, and we continued our course up the river.

The next day, Sunday, we spent in camp at the foot of a wild and beautiful cataract. The weather was warm, and the black flies and mosquitos swarmed in the woods and about camp so thickly that we could nowhere escape from their ceaseless hum and dreaded bite. In this neighborhood



CATARACT, STONE RIVER.

they did not appear to have the customary respect for the smudge. Dense smoke was made about camp, but the flies only appeared to revel in it.

At camp the men were variously employed. A fishing net had been put out in an eddy at the foot of the rapids the previous night, and when taken up in the morning some of the finest fish I have ever seen were found in it. Two salmon trout measured three feet one inch and three feet two inches in length respectively, and the whitefish, of which there

## CHIPEWYAN TO BLACK LAKE

were a large number, ranged in weight from six to ten pounds. I may add, in deference to a suspicion which statements of this nature sometimes give rise to, that these facts can be amply verified. Towards evening we looked for the return of the four natives who had promised us their assistance, but they came not.

Following this day of rest came one of most laborious, exhausting work. Our camp was not only at the foot of a beautiful fall, but in consequence was at the lower end of a rough, rocky portage, found to be three miles in length, and the canoes were all heavily loaded, containing some four thousand pounds of cargo to be transported. One of our men, Corrigan, was unfortunately laid up for the time with an ugly gash in the knee, so we had only five packers; but being fresh and in good spirits, they went at their work with a rush, notwithstanding a rocky hill of two hundred feet which had to be climbed, and a deep muskeg which obliged them to wade. Before nightfall, however, their spirits were away down as a result of this slavish work. Feet were fearfully blistered, and all complained of pains in one place or another: but each man had carried six loads to the upper end of the portage, which represented a walk of thirty-three miles, eighteen of which were travelled with one-hundred pound loads upon their backs, over rocky hills and through swamps knee-deep with mire. This was disheartening work at the outset, but it was good training for what was to follow.

The next morning the weather was hot and the flies were out in swarms, as on the day before. The men were all foot-sore and stiff, but without a grumble resumed their work. They were obliged to make two more trips before everything was across, and by that time it was nearly noon: still, without a pause for rest, they loaded the canoes, pushed out into the lake—a small expansion of the river—and headed for the opposite shore, where we soon discovered the mouth of the river we were to ascend. While yet far out on the lake we

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

could see its foaming water, and as we drew nearer could plainly hear the unmistakable roar of a cataract. Some dis-



ON THE PORTAGE.

tance to the right, on a sandy beach, we went ashore, and found ourselves at the foot of a second long portage.



## CHIPLEWYAN TO BLACK LAKE

Because of the condition of our men, camp was now ordered to be pitched, so as to give them some chance to recruit. My brother and I walked across the portage, and found it to be three and one-half miles in length. It was, however, much less difficult than the former one, being more level and less rocky. Its upper end terminated on the shore of Black Lake, where we hoped to find Indians who would help us across. But in this we were disappointed, and, instead of Indians, found only old forsaken "tepee" poles and



RAFTS LOADED WITH VENISON.

blackened fireplaces. We tried to rest for a while upon the shore of Black Lake, but the flies swarmed about us with such frightful fury that we were compelled to beat a retreat, and seek rest where alone it could be found—beneath our mosquito awnings at camp.

Just here I am reminded of an Indian tradition which says that it was on these very portages that the Great Spirit first made the black flies, and our experience, we thought, would tend to bear out that belief.

On the afternoon of the 7th we started out in a north-easterly direction, following the shore of Black Lake (ex-

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

plored by my brother in 1892) for a distance of about sixteen miles, until we reached the hunting trail, of which he had been informed by the Indians, leading away to the northward. This place until now had been our objective point, and the way to it was known; but beyond this point we knew nothing of the road, or of the country through which it would lead us, excepting for the first few days' travel, to which the Indians' description, quoted at the beginning of this narrative, would apply. From this point northward, for a distance of one hundred miles or thereabouts, we had expected to be guided by the old humbug Moberly, but he having deserted us, we were now dependent on our own resources.



NECK DEVELOPED BY THE TUMP-LINE.

## CHAPTER V.

### *INTO THE UNKNOWN WILDERNESS.*

On Saturday morning, the 8th of July, without guide or map, we commenced our journey into the great untravelled wilderness. The trail commenced with a portage two miles in length, leading through thickets, swamps, and over rocky hills, but by this time the men were accustomed to their work, and went about it in a steadier and more methodical manner. My brother's time was chiefly devoted to the general direction of the party, and an examination of the geology of the country.\* My own time was largely taken up in making the survey and topographical notes of the route, and in collecting the flora of the country; but when our duties permitted and occasion required, we both took a turn at the pack-straps, as we did on this portage.

In order to make an easier trail than the existing circuitous one, which led over sharp angular stones and precipitous rocks, we were obliged to cut our way through a thicket for a distance of half a mile. Having done this, the work of portaging through the forest was begun. During the remainder of the day, and indeed until ten o'clock at night, we continued our labor. Corrigan, who had been crippled, was now at work again, and proved to be a capital man. All hands worked well, but it was amusing to note the craftiness of the Iroquois, who invariably tried to secure light articles to carry, such as biscuits, tents or dunnage bags. With immense loads of comparatively little weight they would stagger off, reminding one of old Atlas carrying the world on his shoulders.

\*For a full description of geological features, etc., see J. B. Tyrrell's Report for 1893-94, Geological Survey.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

When the last loads for the week were laid down at camp, we were a thoroughly tired party. For the past six days we had labored on long portages, and during that time had carried the entire outfit for a distance of about eight miles, over the roughest kind of country, representing a total transport of fifty-six miles, or a walk of 104 miles for each man. Sunday was spent, therefore, by all in enjoying complete rest. The weather continued fine and warm, as it had been all week.



STARTING OFF ON THE TRAIL

During the succeeding day and a half, six little lakes and as many short portages, leading in a northerly direction, were crossed, and then, at noon on the 11th, Wolverine Lake was discovered and its geographical position determined. This lake, only about three miles in width by six in length, is by no means a large body of water, but because of its many deep shore indentations and a consequent coast-line of forty or fifty miles, it was thought by us to be large enough before we discovered our road out of it, which we knew to be by the ascent of a large river from the north. The shores of the

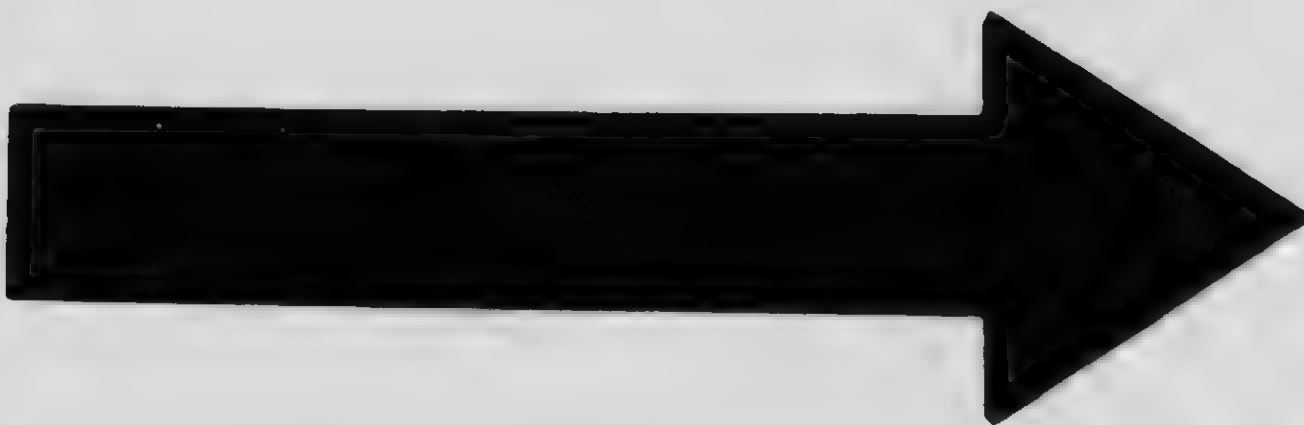
## INTO THE UNKNOWN WILDERNESS

lake were heavily and beautifully wooded with spruce and birch timber, and its surface was studded with islands. At nightfall, after exploring the uttermost recesses of several deep bays, without discovering any trace of the river, we pitched camp, and obtained shelter from a cold, drizzling rain.

The next morning being cool and flies scarce, a plunge bath was the first item on the programme. After disposing of our usual breakfast of bacon and bannocks, the search for the route was resumed. After much careful search, occupying nearly the whole day, the mouth of the river was found, close to where we had first entered the lake. It was much obscured by islands, and owing to the depth of the channel, had an almost imperceptible current: but beyond all doubt it was the road described by the Indians, and though rain was again falling, no time was lost in commencing the ascent.

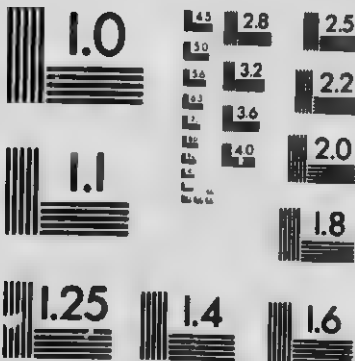
About seven miles up stream we were obliged to seek camp, but a suitable one was not to be found, as the shores were low and flooded with water. A place none too dry was finally selected, and in a drenched condition we scrambled or waded ashore.

As I was enjoying a mug of tea, my brother came into our tent and reported having heard a caribou calf in the swamp close by. Though it was already nearly dark, I picked up my rifle and started out in the direction from which he had heard the noise, in quest of venison. The dense spruce swamp was literally alive with mosquitos, which at every step rose up from the wet grass in swarms and beat into my face. A runway was soon found, and I hurried noiselessly along through the gloom of the forest, hoping soon to hear something of the calf. Many other runways were crossed, and after travelling some distance without any signs of success, I was about to return, for fear of being overtaken by darkness, when a little distance ahead I heard the cracking of a stick. I had no doubt but that it was caused by the foot



# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



**APPLIED IMAGE Inc**

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

of the fawn, so quickly but silently I proceeded. Again and again the noise was heard, and each time nearer than the last. My advance was continued cautiously, until very soon, in a thicket of scrub only a few yards ahead, I noticed the moving of some branch. Still no deer could I see, but in creeping up closer, at a distance of not over twenty yards, I suddenly came within full view of an immense black bear, seated on his haunches and occupied in rubbing the mosquitos off his nose. Although taken by surprise at the proportions of the supposed calf, I dropped on one knee, and, levelling my rifle, fired at the back of bruin's head, whereat he also exhibited considerable surprise, leaping into the air, making several delirious revolutions, and bolting away into the gloom of the swamp. Though without doubt badly wounded, it was too dark to follow him. The gloom had already spoiled my aim, so without further pursuit I groped my way back to camp.

During the following day the ascent of Wolverine River was continued, and three short portages, the longest one being half a mile, were made. As we proceeded northward the banks of the river became more rocky. In many places bald hill-tops were visible, rising two or three hundred feet above the level of the river. Such timber as there was consisted of spruce, birch and jack-pine.

On the 14th, Birch Lake, a small body of water about nine miles long by two wide, was discovered and surveyed, and near its northern extremity a large, rapid stream was found discharging its foaming waters. Judging the course of this stream to be our route, a portage of half a mile was made past it. This brought us to the southern extremity of another larger lake, which we assumed to be the Indians' so-called "Big Lake," and which, in honor of the then Director of the Geological Survey we have named Selwyn Lake. Being too wide to admit of both shores being sketched from our line of survey, this lake was traversed on the east side only.



## INTO THE UNKNOWN WILDERNESS

In the evening camp was pitched on an island a little distance off shore. On this island a lonely grave was discovered, at the head of which stood a plain wooden cross. It was, doubtless, the grave of some Christian Indian who had been taught by the priests at Fond-du-Lac, and who, when out on a hunting expedition, had been stricken down by the great Reaper, and had been laid here to rest by his companions.

This island camp recalls an incident connected with John, our baker. For some time past, notwithstanding the appetites of the men, his bread had not been giving satisfaction. Some of the party were afraid to eat it on account of the possibilities of canoeing accidents, which, if occurring, would almost certainly result fatally, for with John's bread in one's stomach there could be little hope of remaining afloat. At first John had confined his baking to the making of "grease bannocks," which, after being formed in a pan, were removed and cooked before the fire on a stick; and so long as he baked in his accustomed way he was fairly successful, but as soon as he undertook the use of baking powder, and the production of bread from a reflector (a camp oven), he grievously failed. Being anxious to uphold the dignity of his profession at this camp, he sat up all night endeavoring to improve on his methods, but with little success. Two days later he again undertook the prosecution of his calling, and, after cleaning his hands, brought out his dutch-oven, bake-pans, sack of flour, baking powder, etc. My brother, noticing these preparations, strolled over to a convenient log and there seated himself to watch John's *modus operandi*. The sack was opened and the top of it rolled down until it formed a ring over the flour, in which a hollow was then made with the hands. Into this basin a quart or more of water was poured, and into the water the prescribed quantity of baking powder was stirred and allowed to effervesce before being stirred into the flour. The secret of John's failures was thus disclosed, and he was given instructions on the use of baking

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

powder, with the result that after this we enjoyed better bread.

A week had now passed since leaving the end of the long portage out of Black Lake, and during that time we had made only about eighty miles. This was a slow rate of travel, and would have to be improved on if possible. One day had been lost in discovering the outlet from Wolverine Lake, another spent in ascending the river, and considerable time had been occupied on the several portages.

Sunday, the 16th of July, was spent quietly and profitably at camp after the six days of hard travel, and, strange to say, the flies which had filled the air and made our lives a burden the previous evening had now almost entirely disappeared. The day was bright and warm, affording a good opportunity for lake bathing, and this pleasure was highly appreciated. After one has been subjected to the continual lacerations and stings of flies and mosquitos, and the liberal application of tar-oil for a week or two, a bath is not an unneeded luxury.

On Monday morning the exploration of Selwyn Lake was continued. The shore-line was still found to be irregular and indented by deep bays. Some of these were passed by, but those toward the north end of the lake were carefully examined to their extremities, in our search for the portage of which we had been informed, leading over the Height of Land.

Towards evening our party was surprised by the appearance of a canoe some distance away, and not far from on a little island, an Indian camp. Shaping our course the camp, a salute was fired, and was promptly answered by the Indians. Reaching the camp we were not a little astonished to find that some of the Indians were the very same men who had agreed to assist us over the portages out of Athabasca and Black lakes. They had, no doubt, after meeting old Moberly, been prompted to leave us to shift for ourselves, and had returned in such a way as to avoid meet-

## INTO THE UNKNOWN WILDERNESS

ing us again. From them we now inquired for the Height of Land portage, and were pleased to learn that it was near at hand. Having obtained as much information from these fellows as we could, and arranged once more for three or four of them to assist us over in the morning, we pitched our own camp on a neighboring island.

During the evening most of the Indians paddled across to where we were, and from some of them sketch-maps and useful information were obtained; but their attention was chiefly devoted to filling our men with alarming stories of the fearful dangers and certain disasters which we would encounter should we attempt to pursue the route we were following. They said we would meet with great impassable canyons, and that the country through which it led was inhabited by savage tribes of Eskimos, who would undoubtedly eat us. These and similar stories produced a deep impression on the minds of some of our men, and might have given rise to serious trouble, and even the disorganizing of the whole party. Jim went to my brother, and with a sad face unbosomed his trouble. He said that if he were a single man he would not feel so badly, but having a family dependent on him, he could not run into such destruction as he now learned awaited us. The rest of the men—excepting, perhaps, Francois, who cared for nothing—were equally affected, and it was with some difficulty we managed to reassure them. We told them that these Indians were a set of miserable liars, and were only trying to prevent us from going into their hunting grounds; that I had lived with the Eskimos for nearly two years, and had found them to be far better people than these Indians who were trying to deceive them. We referred them to Moberly, the untrustworthy and false, as a sample of their tribe, and at length persuaded them into disbelieving the stories.

On the morning of the 18th, accompanied by five native Indians, we arrived at our portage, near the northern extrem-

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

ity of the lake, and about fifty miles from the rapids where we had entered it. The portage led, as we had been informed by the Indians, over the Height of Land to the northward. It was found to be a mile and a quarter long. Its northern end terminated on the shore of another large lake, the level of which was ascertained to be fifty feet lower than Selwyn Lake. Separating the two lakes, rocky hills rose to elevations of two or three hundred feet (fourteen or fifteen hundred feet above sea level), and between them wound the trail, which was comparatively level and easy. With the help of the natives, our stuff, already considerably reduced, was soon portaged and the canoes again launched and loaded. Before these operations were completed, realizing the fact that we had now reached a summit of the continent, it seemed to me a most suitable place to leave the emblem of our country. Selecting, therefore, a tall, straight tamarack, and providing myself with hatchet and nails, I climbed to the top of the tree and there fixed securely the flag of Canada. As I descended I lopped off the branches and thus made of the tree an excellent flag-pole.



AN ENGLISH-CREE TRAPPER.

## CHAPTER VI.

### *THE HOME OF THE CARIBOU.*

From Lake Athabasca to the Height of Land our course had been constantly up stream, but from this point to the sea our way must ever be with the current. Having launched our little fleet in the lake on the north side of the watershed, the new stage of the journey was begun with a strong, fair breeze.

The lake is a large one, and has been named Daly Lake—after the Hon. T. M. Daly, then Minister of the Interior for Canada. Towards the centre of it was discovered a peninsula, which is connected with the west shore only by a very narrow neck of land, across which a portage was made. For a day and a half we were delayed here by a gale, the most severe we had so far encountered. So wild was the lake during this storm that water-spouts were whirled up from its billows and carried along in great vertical columns for considerable distances.

Certain remarkable physical features, in the shape of great "Eskers," or high sand ridges, were also observed at this locality. They were composed of clear sand and gravel, were sixty or seventy feet in height, trended in a north-easterly and south-westerly direction, were quite narrow on top, and so level and uniform that they might well be taken to be the remains of the embankments of ancient railways. Geologists, however, have another theory accounting for their origin, namely, that they were formed by fissures or splits in the ancient glaciers.

On the sheltered southerly slopes of these ridges many new

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

varieties of plants were found, and some others which had been collected farther south were here seen for the last time on the journey. Notable among the latter was the aspen, of which several stunted, gnarled specimens were observed. When the storm had abated sufficiently the traverse of the lake shore was resumed, when other notable features appeared.

A large part of the country was now composed of frozen mossy bogs, sloping gently down towards the lake. In the higher portions of the bogs the moss was still growing, but elsewhere it was dead, and, excepting the upper few inches, was imbedded in solid glaciers. In many instances these frozen bogs or glaciers were found to be breaking off into the lake, and in such places they presented brown, mossy, vertical faces, from ten to twenty feet above the water. In examining these vertical sections they were observed, as on top, to consist of frozen moss to within about a foot of the surface. The first of the moss glaciers, if I may call them such, were observed near the Height of Land, but towards the north end of Daly Lake they composed a large part of the country, and timber occurred only in scattered, isolated patches.

According to our Indian information we should now be close to the outlet of the lake. During the morning of the 22nd, after a good deal of searching in many deep bays, the entrance to the Dubawnt (broad, shallow river) was discovered. It was indeed a great, broad and rapid river, broken up into many shallow channels, whose waters seemed to have been, as it were, spilled over the edge of the lake in the lowest places. This was the river we had set out to explore, and with nothing more than conjectures as to where it would lead us, we pushed our canoes into the stream and sped away to the northward. Landings were made when necessary to carry on the survey and examination of the country, but at other times the canoes were kept in the stream and the men at the paddles. Many rapids were run but our veteran steersman

## THE HOME OF THE CARIBOU

Pierre, with his skill, judgment and unflinching nerve, was usually able to map out his course and steer it successfully, sometimes between rocks and through channels little wider than his canoe.

Upon one occasion, which I well recollect, Pierre led the way for the centre of a wild, rocky rapid. We soon saw that he was making for a heavy chute between two great boulders where the channel was barely wide enough to allow us to



DUBAWNT RIVER.

pass. I determined to follow, but our third canoe sought a channel nearer shore. Pierre, by keeping straight in the centre of the current, was shot through the notch in safety, but my steersman, less skillful, allowed our canoe to be caught by an eddy. Like a flash it was whirled end for end, and, happily for us, struck the chute stern first instead of sideways and was carried through safely, no thanks to the steersman! The third canoe fared worst of the three, for it was

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

dashed upon a great flat rock and broken in the bottom. Its occupants, by jumping out upon the rock, managed to hold it until assistance could be given them. The load of the disabled canoe was safely landed by one of the others, and the damage soon repaired.

We were now fairly beyond the limit of woods, which for some time past had been gradually becoming thinner, more scattered and of more stunted growth. On this account it is impossible to lay down any definite line as the limit of the forest. Outlying patches of spruce and tamarack might still be found here and there in the most favored localities, but as a whole the country was now a vast rolling, treeless wilderness.



RAPIDS, DUBAWNT RIVER.

On the evening of the 28th of July we reached the north end of an expansion of

the river named Barlow Lake. Our supply of meat was already running low. Being quite unable to carry provisions with us for the whole trip, we had, in starting, taken only a limited quantity of this kind of food, trusting to our ability to replenish the supply from time to time by the way. Up to this time, however, we had seen nothing in the shape of game since leaving Lake Athabasca, excepting the one black bear which had made good his escape. Plenty of old deer-tracks were to be seen, but not a single deer, and in consequence we were beginning to feel some anxiety. If game should not be found within a week or ten



## THE HOME OF THE CARIBOU

days, we would have to return, or else proceed with the prospect of starvation before us.

We had only begun to think seriously on this question when on the evening above-mentioned, just as we had gone ashore to camp, a moving object was noticed on a little island out in the lake. By means of our field-glasses it was made out to be a caribou, and I need hardly say that no time was lost in manning a canoe and pulling for the island. As we approached, the caribou watched us closely, and, soon satisfied of danger, bounded into the air, galloped to the farther side of the island, plunged into the water, and struck out for the nearest shore. The rate at which the frightened animal tore its way through the water was really marvellous, and for a time it looked as if we would not be able to overtake it with our light canoe and four paddles. Every muscle was strained, both of deer and men, so that the hunt resolved itself into a veritable race for life. Unfortunately for the poor animal, the course was too long, and before it could reach the shore we had overhauled and shot it. That night we enjoyed our first meal of venison.

The next day, after descending the river a distance of five or six miles, and getting into a body of water named Carey Lake, through which we were steering a central course, one of the party called attention to something moving on the distant shore to our right. It turned out to be not one but a band of caribou. Our canoes were headed to leeward of the band, that they might not scent us as we approached the shore. Drawing nearer, we found there was not only one band, but that there were many great bands, literally covering the country over wide areas. The valleys and hillsides for miles appeared to be moving masses of caribou. To estimate their numbers would be impossible. They could only be reckoned in acres or square miles.

After a short consultation, a place for landing, near a small grove of tamarack—one of the last we saw—was chosen.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

Rifles were examined and an ample supply of cartridges provided. Shot-guns and revolvers were furnished to four of the men, and thus prepared we landed and drew up the canoes. So far the deer had apparently not seen us, but to prevent a general stampede, it was arranged that I should go around to the rear of a large detachment of the herd near by, while my brother should approach them from the shore. Accordingly, I was given fifteen minutes to run around, a mile or so, behind some rising ground. Meanwhile the rest of the party scattered themselves about in different places, and at the given time my brother, having approached within easy range, opened the fray by bringing down a noble buck. At this first shot the whole band—a solid mass of several thousands of caribou—was thrown into confusion, and wildly rushed to and fro, not knowing which way to flee. Simultaneously with my brother's shot, I opened fire on them from the rear, and our armed men charged from the sides, while the other two were obliged to take refuge upon a great boulder to avoid being trampled to death. The band was speedily scattered, but not before a woful slaughter had been made, yielding us an abundant supply of fine fresh meat, for which we were sincerely thankful. It was fortunate that there was wood at hand with which to make a fire and dry the meat. Having slain as many animals as we required, the men were set to work to prepare dried meat for the rest of the trip.

This stroke of good fortune gave us much encouragement, as we thought we had nothing to fear now from lack of provisions. Several days were spent in drying the eighteen or twenty carcasses which were selected, and while this work was progressing my brother and I had ample time to roam over the hills and view and photograph the bands of deer which were still everywhere about us. After the slaughter of the first day we carried no rifles with us, but, armed only with a camera, walked to and fro through the herd, causing little more alarm than one would by walking through a herd

## THE HOME OF THE CARIBOU

of cattle in a field. The experience was delightful, one never to be forgotten.

The reindeer, which is the same as the Barren Ground caribou, is an animal of exceptional interest. To those whose imaginations dwell on visions of St. Nicholas and his coursers it is the ideal steed; while to the hardy native of the frigid zone it is a faithful and efficient servant, and is undoubtedly the most useful and valuable of the fifty or more known varieties of deer.

In different localities, and at different seasons of the year, reindeer vary in appearance. They range in weight from one hundred to four hundred pounds. During the months of June and July they present their poorest appearance, being then lean and scrawny, and their half-shed coats ragged and frowsy. By the month of August they have discarded their tattered last winter garments, and have assumed sleek, glossy brown, summer coats, which give them a smaller but much more comely appearance. From this time, both because of increasing flesh and length of hair, they become gradually larger and more handsome, until, by the month of November, when they don their winter suits of white and grey, they are transformed in appearance into the noblest animals of the chase.

Then it is that the enormous antlers of the male deer have attained their full, hard growth, and he is thus armed for the many battles habitually fought during the months of November and December for the possession of favored members of the female sex. During the month of January these antlers of the male deer, having served their purpose as weapons of warfare, are annually cast. Within a few weeks of the falling of the old horns, soft new ones begin to form beneath the skin, and gradually these increase in size until they reach maturity the following autumn. During growth the antlers remain comparatively soft, and are covered with skin and fine short hair, known as the "velvet." At maturity a cir-

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

cular burr is formed at the base of the horn. This has the effect of cutting off the blood-vessels, thus causing the velvet to dry and shrivel and ultimately peel off. The peeling of the velvet is also hastened by the deer rubbing their antlers upon rocks and trees. With each successive year the antlers are supplemented by one additional prong, so that the number of prongs or tines is a positive indication of the age of the deer. I have counted as many as twenty-two prongs on one horn, or twice that number on the pair. Unlike every other variety of deer, the caribou is antlered in both sexes, the only difference being that in the case of the females the horns are rather smaller, and more slender and delicate in their formation, than those of the males.

The hoofs of the reindeer are very large in proportion to other parts of the body, and, being cloven, they spread greatly in walking. This characteristic peculiarly fits them for travelling upon the crusted snow, through which other deer would break and flounder in a hopeless manner.

Concerning the habits of the reindeer, they are both gregarious and migratory. During the summer season their resort is the open plain or the sea-coast, where to some extent they escape from their tormentors, the mosquitos and black flies, and find abundance of food in the tender grasses, the ground birch, or the willow buds. In the autumn they turn their steps toward the woodlands or more sheltered districts, where they spend the long, severe winter, subsisting on tree-buds, moss or lichens.

The breeding season occurs in the early spring, before winter quarters are vacated; and the number of fawns borne by a doe at one time ranges from one to three.

From an economic or commercial point of view, the reindeer is highly prized. By the Laplanders and other people it is domesticated, and takes the place of the horse, the dog, the cow or the goat of other countries. As a traveller it is swift and enduring, being capable of hauling from two to



HERD OF BARREN GROUND CARIBOU.



A FOREST OF ANTLERS.

## THE HOME OF THE CARIBOU

three hundred pounds upon a sled, as much as one hundred miles per day; and as compared with the dog, it possesses the great advantage of being able to obtain its food by the way.

As a source of venison it cannot be excelled, especially in the autumn season, when it is in prime condition. During September and October the males are rolling fat; and as food their flesh is then equal to the finest beef. Of all meats I have ever tasted, certainly reindeer tongues take the first place for daintiness and delicacy of flavor.

From the skins of the reindeer the natives of the Arctic regions make almost every article of winter clothing. For this purpose it is most admirably suited, both because of its great warmth and its remarkable lightness. Through different methods of tanning and dressing it is made adaptable to a great variety of other uses. Sewing thread, lashing twine and other strong lines are also made from sinew obtained from along the spine of this animal.

What the buffalo was to the North American Indian in days gone by, the reindeer is now to the Eskimos and other natives of the north country.



N.-W. M. P. "OFF DUTY."

## CHAPTER VII.

### *A GREAT FROZEN LAKE.*

BEFORE leaving "Caribou Camp" a cairn of rocks was built on the top of an immense boulder, conspicuously situated on the summit of a point reaching out into the waters of Carey Lake. A record of our journey to date was placed in it, and the "flag that's braved a thousand years the battle and the breeze" left floating overhead.

On the 2nd of August the journey was resumed, and during the day a remarkable grove was found on the north shore of the lake, in latitude  $62^{\circ} 15'$  north. As a whole, the country was now a treeless, rocky wilderness, but here by a little brook grew a clump of white spruce trees, perhaps thirty in all, of which the largest measured eight feet in circumference two feet above the ground. Such a trunk would be considered unusually large in a forest a thousand miles to the south, but here it and its fellows stood, far out in the Barren Grounds, with their gnarled, storm-beaten tops, like veritable "Druids of eld."

In this grove many varieties of plants were found; among others, wood violets, which were here seen for the last time on the trip. Not the least enjoyable feature of this little oasis was that it afforded us an opportunity of having a good noonday fire, which of late had been a rare luxury.

Pushing out our canoes, we continued the traverse of the coast to the westward, in search of the Dubawnt, but it could not be found until the morning of the following day, when, at the north-western extremity of the lake, it was again discovered. The river commenced with a wild rapid of about thirty feet fall, and this we found to be followed within a



## A GREAT FROZEN LAKE

distance of twenty miles by seven others, all of which together aggregated a fall of about 120 feet, which took us to the level of Markham Lake, named in honor of Admiral A. H. Markham, R.N.

While traversing this lake a decided change in the climate



THE FLAG FLOATING AT "CARIBOU CAMP."

was observed. For the first time since the early part of the season snow-banks were seen on the hill-sides, and the weather, which had been as a rule wet and cold since leaving the valley, became decidedly colder. Toward the north end of the lake we passed great piles of rafted ice on the shore. Such conditions during the month of August were highly suggestive of the character of climate which must exist here in the winter season.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

Near the outlet of Markham Lake was found an exceptionally interesting little island. For weeks we had seen nothing but Laurentian or Huronian hills, but here was a solitary out-lier of white Cambrio-Silurian limestone. The size of the island was perhaps not more than ten acres, but its whole composition was quite different from anything in the district, and growing on it were found many entirely new varieties of plants. Several hours were spent here with fruitful results, and just as the shadows of evening were stealing from the rocky hills far across the lonely plains, we dis-



ICE ON THE SHORE OF MARKHAM LAKE.

covered, at the north end of the lake, our river, upon the bare, high, rocky bank of which we pitched camp.

It is worthy of note that at this point some very old moss-grown "tepee" poles and fragments of birch bark were found, indicating that in days gone by the spot had been visited by Indians, though it was now known to them only in legends. We had seen no recent traces of Indians since entering the Dubawnt, but at some time they had descended thus far, and had camped on the same bald hill which we now occupied. There was more than sentiment to us in the

## A GREAT FROZEN LAKE

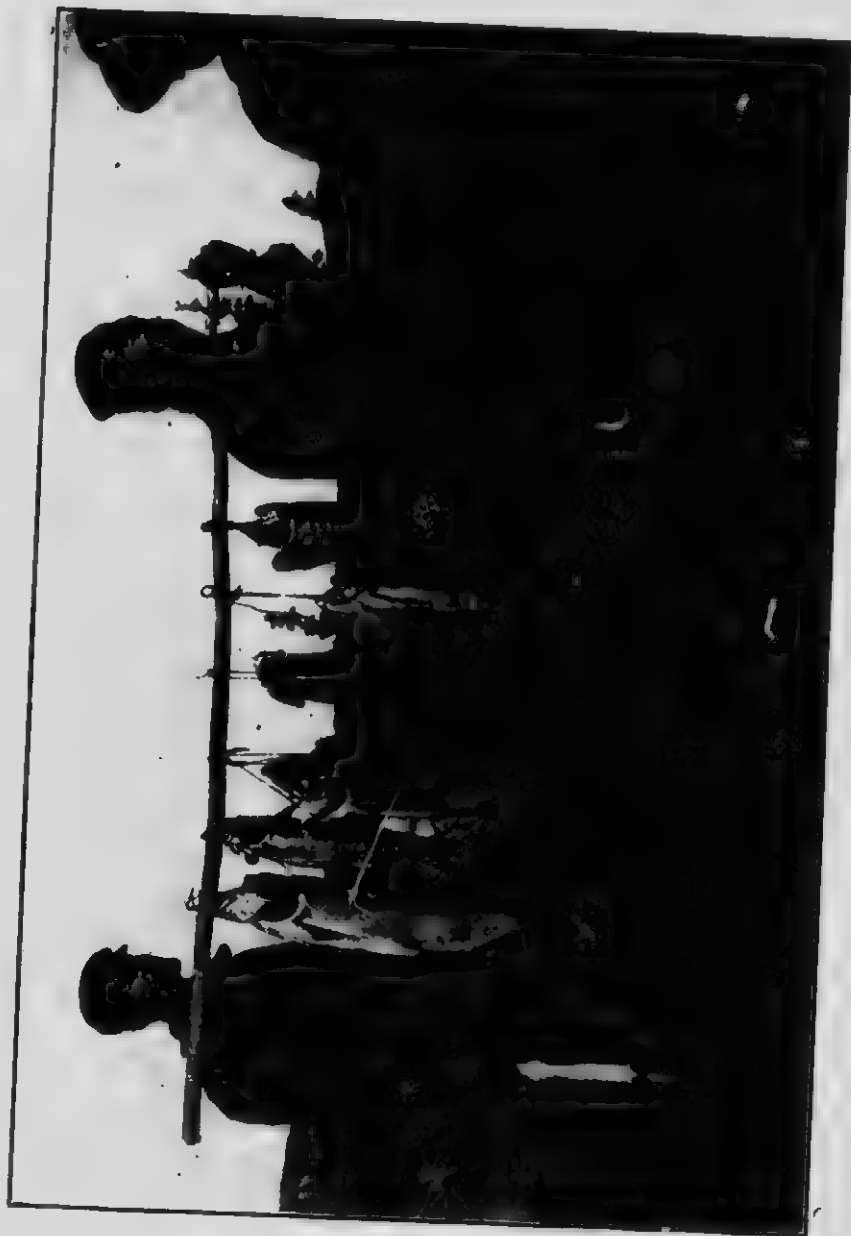
fact, for from the old rotten poles, few and small though they were, we built a fire that gave us not a little comfort and cheer.

On the 5th of August, after partaking of a hurried breakfast of venison—of which, by the way, our supplies now almost entirely consisted—the canoes were again launched in the swift stream, in which during the day rapid after rapid was run, until six were successfully passed and a descent of over a hundred feet had been made.

At about six o'clock in the evening, having made twenty miles, a fortunate incident occurred. As we were approaching a seventh rapid we suddenly found ourselves enveloped in a dense, chilling mist, which so obstructed the view that we were unable to proceed. As we went ashore at the head of the rapid we discovered, much to our delight, a little patch of stunted black spruce trees. They were twisted and gnarled, and not more than four or five feet in height, but as fuel they were the source of much comfort, and beside them we decided to camp, it being Saturday night. During the day's run we had been soaked by the spray of the rapids, and were therefore in good condition to again enjoy the warm, cheerful blaze of a fire, around which we all huddled and sat far into the night, drying our clothing, rehearsing adventures of the day, and discussing the prospects of the future.

On Sunday we had a further opportunity of enjoying the camp-fire, cooked provisions and dry clothing, all which are rare luxuries on the Barren Lands. Our fishing nets, which had been set in the river the night before, were taken up loaded with magnificent whitefish and trout, the former ranging from six to ten pounds in weight, and the latter up to twenty-five pounds.

During the afternoon, as my brother was tramping in the interior, he reached the summit of an adjacent hill, where a most dreary and chilling scene opened to his vision. To the east and northward, not many miles away, and extending as



A GOOD CATCH.

## A GREAT FROZEN LAKE

far as the eye could reach, there appeared a vast white plain shrouded in drifting clouds of mist. It was evidently a great lake, still covered in the month of August with a field of ice, and was probably the Dubawnt or Tobaunt Lake, known in a legendary way to the Athabasca Indians, and sighted over one hundred years ago by Samuel Hearne when on his journey to the Coppermine River. Its re-discovery was now a matter of the deepest interest to us. Was it to form an insurmountable obstacle in our path? was the question at once suggested, and, judging from appearances, most of the men were of opinion that it would.

On Monday morning, the 7th of August, all undismayed, we broke camp early, and bidding good-bye to the last vestige of growing timber to be seen, continued down the river toward the frozen lake. Four more rapids were passed, and about 10 a.m., retarded by a strong east wind, we went ashore on a little island in the broad mouth of the river. Here we built another cairn of rocks, upon which were painted, with red enamel, the latitude of the spot and the date and name of the expedition.

In the afternoon, the wind having moderated, we started out for the mainland to the north. We followed it for some miles to the eastward, and then struck across to a long point, which appeared to be the outermost point of the river shore. Up to this time we had seen nothing of the ice-field, but here it was, tight in against the shore, and defying farther advance by canoe. Towards the edge of the pack the ice was much broken and honey-combed, but it was far too heavy to be tackled by canoes or even stout boats. It was decided, therefore, to turn into what we supposed was a bay, just passed, and from the shore get a view of the pack. We had no sooner altered our course than a deer was sighted close by, shot, and taken on board as fresh meat. It was found that the point was that of a long island, and that the supposed bay

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

was a channel through which we might pass unobstructed by ice.

By this time, however, the wind was again blowing strongly, and a cold, heavy rain setting in drove us to camp. During the night the wind increased to a gale, accompanied by torrents of rain, which flooded the tents and saturated our clothing and blankets. Not a vestige of fuel was to be found in the country, but with a spirit lamp we made hot tea and appeased our sharp appetites with some remnants of boiled venison. For three days the storm continued. On the fourth it turned to snow and the temperature went down to freezing--rather inhospitable weather for the 10th of August.

Next morning, the gale having sufficiently subsided, camp was called about four o'clock, and we continued on our way through the channel we had entered, and along the west shore of the lake in open water until 8 a.m., when we again found ourselves hemmed in by heavy floating ice, which in several places was measured and found to be seven feet in thickness. To advance here in the canoes was impossible, so a favorable spot for landing was selected, at the base of the point where the ice was hard ashore.

Just as we were landing, a small band of deer was seen feeding on a grassy plain not far away, and as our supply of fresh venison was nearly gone, we made plans for a hunt. It was arranged that my brother and I should take up our positions in concealment on a low neck of land between the shore and a small lake, and that the men should so place themselves as to drive the band within range of us. We managed to reach our vantage ground unobserved, but one of the canoe men in attempting to carry out his instructions awkwardly exposed himself and alarmed the deer, causing them to speedily scatter. Some of them, however, bounded past within range of our rifles, and three were brought down, which were sufficient to replenish the larder.

Not far from the landing place was a high hill, so, pro-

## A GREAT FROZEN LAKE

viding ourselves with field-glasses, we set out for its summit. As we tramped across country we found the ground frozen and all the little ponds covered by new ice. Such a condition of things was not the most enlivening, and it was a point of discussion with us whether the season of this land was spring or autumn. Upon reaching the hill-top we were well repaid for our labor. Away to the south and the east, as far as we could see, the ice-field extended, but to the north there lay much open water, and near the base of the hill there was a comparatively narrow neck of land across which we might portage our outfit and get to the open water. This we quickly decided to do.

Having accomplished this task we were once more free, but before nightfall were again blocked by the pack. In a deep bay by the mouth of a small river we went into camp, feeling somewhat disheartened by our ill fortunes. Neither wood nor moss with which to make a fire could here be found, but with spirit lamps some hot tea was made, and from it as much comfort was extracted as possible, for there was little elsewhere to be found. Meeting with so much ice at this season of the year made the prospects of farther advance northward anything but encouraging, but we resolved, if it were possible, to push on and see the end of the great river we had thus far descended.

The morning of the 12th broke cold and dreary. New ice everywhere covered the ponds, but camp was astir early, and it was with much pleasure we discovered that the ice-pack, which had forbidden our advance the night before, had now moved off the shore and left a channel of open water. Into this we gladly made our way, and once more the paddles were plied lustily. During the day we encountered much ice, solid fields of which extended out from the land, but we were able to get along without much obstruction. Several white wolves were seen on the shore as we passed, and at some places, where landings were made, numerous little

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

ermine were observed darting about among the rocks. The formation of the coast was found to consist largely of a remarkable-looking ferruginous conglomerate, and, despite the extremely barren and dreary aspect of the country, a large variety of beautiful little flowers was collected.

At nightfall, after a long day's struggle with the opposing elements, as we were hauling the canoes ashore towards the shelter of some rocky cliffs, we were suddenly set upon by a pack of huge grey wolves. A great, gaunt, hungry-looking brute with dilated eye-balls led the attack. He was the largest wolf in the pack, and a daring brute; but for once, at least, he met his master, as he was promptly bored from end to end with a slug from my brother's rifle. The leader of the pack having been thus dispatched, the others fled, but avenged themselves by howling at us all night long from the surrounding hills.

With the pack several little wolves had been seen, and when the old ones beat their retreat an effort was made to capture them; but unsuccessfully, for just as young partridges suddenly and mysteriously disappear in the leafy woods when danger threatens, so did these young wolves disappear among the rocks, and though we searched carefully, we could not get sight of one.

I have said the wolves here encountered were grey. This seemed a little peculiar, since any that we had seen for some time past had been of the white Arctic variety, which do not travel together in packs, like those of the timber country.

At this locality, which was close to the north-west extremity of Dubawnt Lake, the country was more than ordinarily broken, and was distinctively marked by the existence of several great hills of sand. The highest of these sand mountains I became ambitious to climb, in order to obtain a view of the surrounding country and have a look for the outlet of the lake. In the open country one can often, in an hour or two, obtain more information in this way from a prominent



## A GREAT FROZEN LAKE

elevation than would otherwise be possible in two or three days' travel. So it was on this occasion, when, in company with two canoemen, I obtained a variety of information.

From the summit one could get a grand view of the whole surrounding country, and thus an opportunity was afforded of gaining much interesting topographical information. In the performance of this work my binoculars were of invaluable assistance, enabling me to trace the natural features of the country for a considerable distance.

While thus scanning the broad, dreary plains from my vantage point, scattered bands of deer could be seen here and there, also two or three wolves and a wolverine. This latter animal, also known as the glutton, being not very far distant, afforded us some amusement. We had no rifles with us, but I had my revolver, and seeing that François was keen for a chase, I offered him the use of it.

Opportunities for excitement were seldom neglected by our dare-devil young Westerner, and on this occasion, quickly availing himself of my offer, he started down the steep hill at a break-neck pace, followed by John, in a bee-line for the wolverine.

No sagacious Indian cunning of which we so often read, was brought to play in the hunt. It was merely a question of which could run the faster and keep it up the longer. The wolverine is not a swift animal, nature having provided him with only short limbs, but on this occasion he used such as he had to the very best possible advantage, and with a rolling gait made his way off across the rough, stony plains at a record-breaking pace. His pursuers were, however, observed to be gaining on him, and as the distance between the runners gradually lessened, the race became exciting, even to me, looking on from the hill-top.

Once or twice in their wild chase the men had had tumbles, but, recovering themselves, continued to gain on the wolverine until they had almost overhauled him. Then "bang!" went

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

the revolver, and the glutton, unhurt, dodging around some rocks, was almost run upon by François, who in his excitement fired again, and at the same time took a header. It appeared as if he had shot himself instead of the wolverine, but he had hit neither; he had only experienced another bad tumble on the rough, rocky ground. Gathering himself up again, François followed in hot pursuit, making a most determined chase, but just as he was about to do the tragic act, Mr. Wolverine disappeared among the broken rocks, and could not any more be found.

Thus ended the hunt, and the men, greatly disgusted, wearily recrossed the plain and climbed the hill.

Finding great quantities of moss in the neighborhood, several large piles of it were collected, tied up into bundles, and taken back with us to camp for fuel. Two varieties of this moss fuel were commonly found growing upon the stony hill-tops, the one, reindeer moss (*Lichen rangiferinus*), being almost white, and the other black and wiry-looking and the better fuel of the two. Either variety, of course, had to be dry in order to burn, and that was a condition in which we seldom found it, as incessant wet weather had been experienced since entering the Barren Grounds.

When dry moss was found, therefore, it was our custom to keep the kettles boiling all or most of the night, in order to cook enough meat to supply camp for several days.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### *ON THE LOWER DUBAWNT.*

UNTIL the evening of the 15th of August, we paddled on through varied scenes of ice and open water, following the barren shore-line in search of the outlet of Dubawnt Lake.

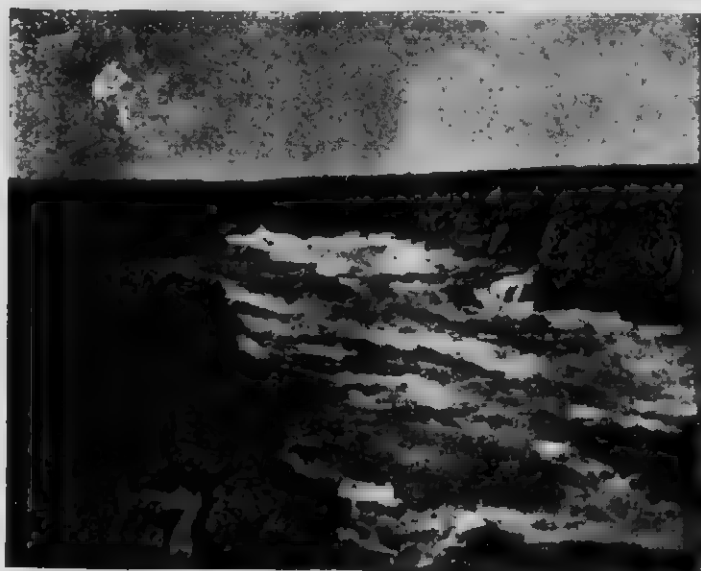
In addition to game already mentioned, two young brood of wild geese, not yet able to fly, were seen. It is commonly said that the breeding place of the wild goose has never been discovered, but here, at any rate, was the breeding place of these.

On the morning of the 16th we were early aroused by the voice of a howling gale and the pelting rain, which was freely beating through our flapping tents. Of these, our meagre shelters, some of the guys were broken, and the tent occupied by my brother and myself was only prevented from being blown away by the unpleasant performance of scrambling out in the darkness, exposing ourselves to the piercing wind and driving rain, and securing it with new ropes and piles of stones. Upon this occasion, also, blankets and clothing not yet dry since the last wetting were again saturated. Everything in the way of instruments, photographic supplies, note books, etc., were piled together at one side of the tent and well covered by a rubber sheet, and at the other side we made ourselves as comfortable as possible, which was in truth pretty miserable.

This storm continued with fury for two days, and during this time, wet and shivering in the tents, we found our only spark of comfort in the brewing and imbibing of hot chocolate prepared over the spirit lamp. On the afternoon of the second

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

day the rain ceased, and the wind fell sufficiently to enable us to faintly hear to the north the roar of heavy rapids. Stimulated by the sound, we struck camp at seven o'clock in the evening and started out for what we hoped might prove to be the Dubawnt flowing out of the lake, and after a long and late pull we were gratified to find our hopes realized.



RAPIDS ON THE LOWER DUBAWNT.

On account of the lateness of the hour we had no opportunity that night of examining the river, further than to observe that it was unobstructed by ice, which observation afforded us great satisfaction.

On the morning of the 18th we launched in the clear, strong stream of the Lower Dubawnt, and very soon found ourselves at the head of the rapids we had heard. At the second rapid the first unmistakable signs of the recent habitations of

## ON THE LOWER DUBAWNT

Eskimos were discovered. They consisted of rings of camp stones, an old bow, several broken arrows, a whip-stock and numerous broken or partly formed willow ribs of a "kyack," or canoe.

About six miles or so down from Dubawnt Lake we arrived at the head of a wild rapid, where the broad river rushes down through a narrow, rocky gorge, not more than fifty yards in width, and about two and a half miles in length. Over this entire distance the river forms one continuous boiling, tumbling stream of foaming water, which at every rock in its course is dashed high in air into myriad particles of spray. At the foot of the rapid the river again widens out beyond its usual width into Grant Lake, which was still more than half covered by last winter's ice.

Past the entire length of this rapid a portage of everything had, of course, to be made. Camp was pitched at the foot, and near it were found bones of musk-oxen. Later, on the opposite side of the rapid, two of these animals were seen.

On the morning of the 19th we started across Grant Lake in a northerly direction, and within a distance of about four miles discovered, to the left, the mouth of a small stream named Chamberlain River, flowing in from the westward, and much to our delight, upon its sandy beaches found dead willow drift-wood in such quantities that we were able to load the canoes with it. Signs of Eskimos were also observed here. Three miles farther north, just west of a remarkable white sand-hill or esker, three hundred feet in height, the Dubawnt now a broad, swift stream, was again entered.

Towards evening we sighted, upon the right bank, some distance ahead of us, the solitary lodge of an Eskimo. In front of the doorway stood a man gazing toward us, and behind and around him excited women and children were gathered. These were all quickly placed inside the "topick" or lodge, and the doorway laced up securely. But the man remained outside, watching us intently. Our canoes were,

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

no doubt, taken to be those of the "Ik-kil-lin" (the Indians) from the south—their hereditary enemies—so they expected nothing good from our coming.

Our own men, recalling to mind the stories of the "savage Eskimos who would undoubtedly eat them," were scarcely less fearful than the solitary native, who, as we drew nearer, was observed through our glasses to be nervous and trembling. As soon as we had approached to within calling distance, I stood up in my canoe and shouted, "*Chimo! chimo! cudloona uragut pecaweunga tacko Innuut*" (Hallo! hallo! we are



ESKIMO LODGE, DUBAWNT RIVER.

white men, glad to see the Eskimos). Before my words were finished the doorway of the topick was torn open, and with great rejoicing and excited gestures all the inmates scrambled out to meet us at the shore as we landed.

The Eskimo himself was a tall, well-built, stalwart man, with a shrewd, intelligent face, and wore the pleasant, characteristic grin of his race. With him were his two wives and six children, and all joined in extending to us a hearty welcome.

## ON THE LOWER DUBAWNT

Their lodge was a large, well-formed, clean-looking one, made of deerskin parchment, and supported by stout spruce poles, which must have been brought from some distant place. Into this dwelling we were cordially invited and most hospitably received. Seats of deerskin were offered by the hostesses and venison was placed before us, while we in return handed around presents of beads, tobacco, matches, and such things. About us were to be seen evidences of communication with traders, such as a large tin kettle, two old guns and a pair of moleskin trousers. Upon inquiry I was told they had received them in trade from other "Innuits" (Eskimos). We satisfied ourselves that this family were accustomed to meet with the Eskimos from Hudson Bay, who trade at Fort Churchill or Marble Island, and for that reason the Dubawnt must in all probability flow into the bay. We were, moreover, soon convinced of this by getting the Eskimo to draw us a sketch of the river's course.

From the natives we also secured articles, such as horn spoons, personal ornaments, and two or three deerskin coats, to do us service, if necessary, later in the season. In exchange for these we were asked for powder, bullets and gun-caps, all of which they were badly in need of. About camp there appeared to be an abundance of venison for the present support of the family, but the hunt for musk-oxen was what had brought this venturesome hunter far up the river in advance of his tribe.

As Eskimo interpreter, I had little difficulty in conversing with the natives, though I found that many of my words, as used by the Eskimos on the east coast of Hudson Bay and the north shore of the straits, were not understood. It was not so surprising that many of their words were not understood by me. In the main, however, I found the language to be the same as that spoken by the Eskimos of various other districts formerly visited by me.

Among those of us who for the time shared the hospitality

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

of this native family was our worthy cook, John, who also laid claim to the distinction of being an Eskimo linguist. It was noticeable, however, at this time, that John was unusually silent and backward, more so indeed than any one in the party. After leaving the lodge I asked him if he had understood what the natives were saying, and was not a little amused when he replied, "Y-e-s, but,—b-u-t, t-h-e,—the trouble was I couldn't get them to talk." After a pleasant but brief visit of less than one hour, during which time we received some valuable information about our route, as well as much assurance and encouragement, with many hearty "tabowetings" (good-byes), we parted. As we did so, Louis, my steersman, with an expression of pleasant disappointment on his face, exclaimed, "They are not savage, but real decent people."

The current being strong, our friends at the topick were soon far behind. They had told us that from there to the sea (Hudson Bay) was about twenty days' journey, and though we thought we could likely make it in half that time, we were impressed and spurred on by the knowledge of the fact that we were now far into the interior of the country, and, at the least, eight hundred miles by our road from the nearest Hudson's Bay Company's post, Fort Churchill. This day and the next after visiting the Eskimos we had beautifully bright weather, but the enjoyment of it was marred by our encountering swarms of black flies.

As we glided down the river several white wolves were seen upon the shore, gnawing at the carcase of a deer, and at a distance of about ten miles below the topick we entered another large expanse of water, named Wharton Lake.

While traversing the shores of this lake, which is about twenty miles in length, a number of magnificent specimens of reindeer in prime condition were seen, and several of them shot at ranges of from two to four hundred yards. By this time—the 22nd of August—the skins as well as the carcasses



## ON THE LOWER DUBAWNT

of the deer were at their best, and the centres of several of the hides were saved and dried for use as sleeping mats, while all of the fine fat meat secured was applied to the replenishing of our severely taxed larder.

After describing nearly the entire circumference of this lake, the outlet, much obscured by a labyrinth of islands, was



TYPICAL BARREN LANDS RAPID.

discovered on the east side, close to a conspicuous hill of white quartzite, 230 feet in height.

At the foot of this hill an Eskimo cache, consisting of a "kometic" (sled), snow-shovels, musk-ox horns, etc., was discovered, and here on the night of the 22nd camp was pitched. As no moss or other description of fuel could be found in the vicinity, some of the men considered they had "struck a bonanza" in finding the "kometic," and carried it to camp, intending to utilize it for boiling the kettle. A slat

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTIC'S OF CANADA

---

or two had already been knocked off when, happily, I arrived on the scene in time to prevent its destruction and preserve our good name with the natives.

To the Eskimo who owned the sled it was an invaluable possession, and for us to have destroyed it for one "mess of pottage" would have been a flagrant shame. It was therefore repaired, and carried back to where it had been found; and for a peace-offering a plug of tobacco was left upon it.\*

From our camp at White Mountain, on the morning of the 23rd, we again entered the river, which for ten or twelve miles carried us off to the eastward; then, turning sharply to the northward and flowing swiftly between high, steep banks of sand, it widened out into what has been named Lady Marjorine Lake, a body of water about ten miles long by three or four wide. Through this we passed and at its north-western extremity regained the river.

It began with a rough, rocky rapid, in running which my canoe struck a smooth rock, was badly injured, and nearly filled with water. Though the contents were soaked, everything was landed without serious damage. After a delay of some two hours we were again in the stream and being borne away to the westward, the direction opposite to that we were now anxious to follow.

The river was here a noble stream, deep and swift, with a well-defined channel and high banks of rock or sand. Near the north bank there extended for some miles a high range of dark but snow-capped trappean hills of about five hundred feet in height.

On the night of the 24th we camped at the base of two conspicuous, conical peaks of trap, named by us the Twin Mountains.

\*My brother in revisiting the Barren Lands during the summer of 1894 was hailed by the natives many miles south of the scene of this incident as the "Kudloonah Peayouk" (good white man) who had regard for the goods of an Eskimo, and left on his "kometic" a piece of tobacco.

## ON THE LOWER DUBAWNT

During the whole of the 25th our course continued to be westerly and north-westerly, and because of this we began to feel anxious. We had now passed the latitude of Baker Lake, whither, according to information obtained from the Eskimos, we were expecting the river to take us. Instead of drawing nearer to it, we were heading away toward the Back or Great Fish River, which discharges its waters into the Arctic Ocean, and which was, on our present course, distant only two days' journey.

Towards evening, however, a marked change was observed in the character of the river. The banks grew lower and consisted of soft, coarse-grained sandstone. The water became shallow and the channel broadened out into a little lake, containing numerous shoals and low islands of sand. Just beyond this, much to our surprise and pleasure, we suddenly came upon abundance of drift-wood—not little sticks of willow or ground birch, but the trunks of trees six or eight inches in diameter, as heavy as two men could carry. No growing trees were to be seen in the district, nor had we seen any during the previous three or four hundred miles of our journey. At first, therefore, the occurrence of the wood seemed unaccountable, but the theory soon suggested itself that we must be close to the confluence of some other stream flowing through a wooded country. No other could account for its existence in this remote region, and accordingly this theory was borne out by the discovery, within a short distance, of a river as large as the Dubawnt, flowing in from the westward and with it mingling its dark-colored waters.

The abundance and condition of the drift-wood, which was not badly battered, would indicate that upon the west branch\* few rapids and no lakes exist between the confluence and the

\*Since the original publication of this book the author has had the pleasure and satisfaction of exploring this "west branch," now named the Thelon River, an exceedingly fine and interesting stream, and of discovering a timbered area of one hundred and seventy miles in length along the river valley.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

woodland district, which is perhaps in the vicinity of Great Slave or Clinton-Golden Lake. Lakes occurring on the course of a river act as catch-basins to prevent the further passage of drift-wood. According to information obtained from the Eskimo, some distance up this river there were great numbers of his people engaged in the building of kyacks. We would have been pleased to visit them, but deeming it unwise at this late season to go out of our way, we pulled on with the stream, which was now double its former strength and flowing again to the northward.

Many geese were seen about the low grassy shores and islands, upon one of which latter camp was pitched on the evening of the 25th, and a great blazing, roaring fire of drift-wood kindled.

It was hoped that for some time to come this supply of fuel might continue, for of late we had been entirely without fire for warming purposes. The miserable smudges made of moss or ground birch mixed with deer tallow or sprinkled with alcohol were useful for the purpose of cooking our venison, but for nothing else.

From camp on the morning of the 26th, for a distance of four or five miles, the river still flowed toward the Arctic, but in latitude  $64^{\circ} 41'$  north it swerved around to the east, and then the south-east, and bore us down to the western extremity of a magnificent body of water, which has been named Aberdeen Lake, in honor of their Excellencies Lord and Lady Aberdeen. It was a lovely calm evening when the track of our canoes first rippled the waters of this lake, and as we landed at a bluff point on the north shore and from it gazed to the eastward over the solitary but beautiful scene, a feeling of awe crept over us. We were undoubtedly the first white men who had ever viewed it, and in the knowledge of this fact there was inspiration.

For two days following we enjoyed fine weather—something unusual in the Barren Lands district—and this enabled

## ON THE LOWER DUBAWNT

us to carry on the exploration of the large lake with very little delay. We found the total length to be about fifty miles. Portions of the shore toward the west end are low and sandy, and at one point of landing the remains of an old Eskimo camp, and beside it parts of a human skeleton, were found.

Towards the east end other remarkable traces of Eskimos were seen, in the shape of stone pillars, well and uniformly built, but for what purpose I confess I cannot tell. If they had been located at conspicuous points, or upon hill-tops, I would say they were intended for land-marks. Several were found on the shore of the bay forming the eastern extremity of the lake, and others in more or less obscure places. I am inclined to think the object in building these stone pillars was in some way connected with the hunting of musk-oxen or deer, but they evidently were not intended merely for shelters or hiding places.



ESKIMO CAIRN, ABERDEEN LAKE.



MUSK-OXEN.

## CHAPTER IX.

### HUNTING THE MUSK-OX.

SINCE the original issue of this book the author has had occasion, more than once, to revisit and explore portions of our sub-arctic territory, and, upon one of these expeditions, to penetrate the haunts of the musk-ox and to meet with large numbers of these noble animals. The musk-oxen are claimed as relatives both by the sheep and ox families, though they perhaps more properly represent a distinct family by themselves.

In general appearance they may be said to somewhat resemble huge brown horned sheep, but in size and weight they much more nearly resemble the ox, or, better still, the buffalo, the monarch of the prairies a generation ago.

Like the buffalo, the musk-ox (*Oribos moschatus*) is gregarious in its habits, but where the former existed in thousands the latter is found only in tens—a band of twenty or thirty being as many as are commonly found together. The above comparison of numbers may also be taken as approximately representing the whole existing musk-ox family as compared with that of the buffalo in his palmy days.

In pre-historic times, as shown by the exhumed remains, the musk-ox occupied a very wide area of the earth's surface, both in Europe, Asia and America, but now his range is limited to the northern parts of Canada and Greenland. From personal observation I have found the southern boundary of the musk-ox habitat to-day to be Hudson Straits and Bay, Chesterfield Inlet, the Thelon River, Clinton-Colden and Aylmer Lakes, whereas in the time of Samuel Hearne,

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

one hundred and fifty years ago, we have his assertion that musk-oxen frequented the vicinity of Fort Churchill, four hundred miles south of their present haunts.

It is no doubt a fact that, not only have the musk-oxen been driven farther and farther from the haunts of men, but that their numbers have been correspondingly reduced from year to year by the natives, who have long pursued a policy of systematic slaughter in quest of the princely robes so much in demand by the fur-traders.

Without pretending to justify an action of which I have since been ashamed, I will here endeavor to narrate my first experience in musk-ox hunting, which will serve to illustrate some of the characteristics of the animals.

It was 10 p.m. one glorious sub-arctic night in summer when I, in company with a fellow-explorer, might have been seen climbing to the summit of an elevation of land not far distant from our camp, on the shore of a large lake. We were armed only with field-glasses, compasses and note-books, for our object was that of discovery, being at the time well within the bounds of the unknown.

Seating ourselves upon a large boulder upon the hill-top, our first impressions were those of enchantment, for though the hour was late, the sub-arctic sun was barely hidden below the northern horizon, and the lovely landscape was still brightly illumined by its ruddy glow.

At the base of the elevation upon which we rested, and extending several miles to the northward, stretched the placid waters of the lake, and beyond it, so bright was the night, with the aid of our glasses we could distinctly trace many of the details of the distant shore.

We were thus engaged in admiration and topographical sketching when, upon a green valley some three miles across the lake, several dark moving specks came into view. They at first were thought to be caribou, which are the most common animals of the country, but upon closer scrutiny were



## HUNTING THE MUSK-OX

suspected of being musk-oxen, though up to this time none had been seen by us, nor did we consider that we were as yet within their range.

However, since at our camp in the valley we had not a pound of fresh meat, and nine men were depending upon us for food, it was most naturally resolved that a hunt was in order; so a hasty return was made to our tents, where we found the place as still as death, all of the men being either asleep or away.

After a brief consultation it was decided not to arouse other members of our party. Providing ourselves with two Winchesters and ammunition, we descended to the shore, where our canoes were drawn up on the sand. As we were in the act of launching one of them, two of our Indians approached from the camp, and, guessing our object without a query, volunteered to accompany us.

In a moment the canoe was launched, my friend and I taking our positions in the middle, whilst the Indians occupied bow and stern.

The hour was now about 11 p.m., but the night was gloriously bright and the lake like a mirror of silver. I indicated the direction to take, and we glided away silently on the shimmering surface. The firmament above us was aglow with ruddy light, whilst bright streamers radiated from the northern horizon, where the sunken sun was barely hidden by the dark outline of the distant hills. The scene and experience of that hour were indeed glorious and shall never be erased from my memory. But soon we neared the farther shore of the lake and approached the land under the shadow of a conspicuous bluff, near the opposite side of which we had discerned the moving objects.

In perfect silence our canoe was drawn ashore at the base of the bluff, and, having marked our ground as we approached, my companion and I selected a little gully, or waterway, on the side of the bluff as the best place for our ascent. The

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

Indians, who were unarmed, crept behind close on our heels, evidently courting the protection of the rifles. The hill being high and steep, we were all pretty badly winded before the summit was reached, so a halt was made to recover breath and nerve, for by this time suspense and nervous expectation were keyed up to a pretty high pitch. A few minutes' pause, however, greatly relieved the situation, and, having examined our rifles, we cautiously crept the remaining distance until, our eyes coming level with the brow of the hill, we found ourselves suddenly within full view of nine huge dark, shaggy forms, which, of course, we knew to be musk-oxen. They were all within comparatively close range, not more than one hundred yards distant. It is quite impossible for me to describe the thrill of admiration and excitement which now possessed us, but in an instant we selected the two nearest bulls and fired. Both staggered, but to our surprise neither fell, so without stirring we fired and fired again before they fell.

The remaining seven animals, apparently not having located us, were thrown into a state of frenzy and rushed back and forth in a state of wild disorder.

Having dispatched the first two victims, we turned our rifles upon the next two most dangerous-looking brutes and brought one to earth, but the other, having located us, and with blood streaming from a wound in his side, led the band in a furious charge straight for our position. Nor did we try to evade their bloodthirsty onslaught, but, springing from concealment to our feet, we met them with three deadly volleys. This so demoralized the band that only one young ox got away unharmed. The remaining eight were either killed or wounded. In the heat of the encounter we had forgotten our Indians, but they had thought of themselves and had kept close behind us. They were now set to work to skin and save the best meat of the slain oxen, whilst we proceeded to dispatch the wounded. This was by no means an easy task.

## HUNTING THE MUSK-OX

One old bull (most of the band were males) refused to fall until he had received six mortal wounds, three of which I found from my own subsequent examination passed through his heart, leaving it completely shattered. Others, which had run for some distance, were pursued until the eight huge forms were stretched upon the ground, only the one having escaped.

Whilst the Indians were busily engaged in skinning the oxen, I, with my companion, returned to the camp, and though the hour was now midnight, ordered an immediate move to the scene of the slaughter, so that all might engage in the work of skinning, cutting and curing as much as possible of the meat. At first our slumbering friends were very loath to bestir themselves, or to believe our story of the hunt, but at length they were persuaded that it was no joke we were playing, and camp was removed to the base of Musk-ox Hill.

Whilst several of the party were busying themselves with the arrangements of our new camp, they were suddenly startled by the hoarse bellow of a musk-ox almost at their ears. The young bull which we had allowed to escape had returned in search of his comrades, and had given forceful vent to his feelings just at the moment when he was turning a sharp angle of the bluff within a few feet of a tent occupied by two of my companions. Not having been in the tent I can only imagine the expressions depicted upon their faces, but the musk-ox, finding himself in such unexpected company, galloped past the camp and out onto a long, narrow, bare point extending into the lake. Seeing now an opportunity for sport, and preferring it to further slaughter, Mr. F. and I armed ourselves with cameras, and calling out all hands, we arranged ourselves in a line across the base of the point and proceeded to advance upon the enemy, thinking that he would likely take to the water, and that we might there effect his capture by means of a lasso. We were not long left in doubt as to the outcome of the project, nor were we permitted to push

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

our enemy to the extreme, for, sizing up his position and evidently not wishing to take chances in the lake, he wheeled about and faced our line. For a moment, with lowered head and with fury glaring from his protruding eye-balls, he stood at bay, and then like a rocket sped straight for the centre of our line, where stood Mr. F. with his camera.

A less ferocious-looking object approaching in so precipitate a manner would have been sufficient to cause most individuals to take to the woods, had there been any available, but not so with my friend, who posed like a target until at fifteen feet he snapped the flying animal and sprang to one side only in time to preserve his anatomy. Our project had failed, so far as effecting the capture of the musk-ox was concerned, for he was now gone, but it had proved a huge success as a source of entertainment; nor was the play yet ended. Stimulated by the excitement of the last encounter, Percy — and another member of the party snatched their rifles and set off in pursuit of the ox, which exhibited an inclination to return to the place where he had lost his comrades. Several rifle shots were heard in the distance, and after a short time Percy's companion returned. Other shots were again heard in closer proximity and quick succession, and upon ascending the bluff I witnessed one of the most entertaining episodes I have ever seen. There on the farther side of the hill were Percy and the musk-ox in hot chase of each other around a huge boulder, the former calling excitedly for someone to bring him more cartridges. Believing my friend to be in no great danger, I instead ran for my camera, hoping to procure a snapshot of the scene, which I did, though imperfectly, for the hour of night was now 1.30.

As I approached the combatants, what impressed itself most vividly upon my memory was hearing Percy exclaim, "Get out, you brute!" at the same time bringing his empty rifle with a crash across his adversary's adamant head, certainly doing no damage, unless to the rifle.

## HUNTING THE MUSK-OX

---

Others of our party, who were less interested in photography than I, responded promptly to Percy's appeal for assistance, and immediately upon the accomplishment of my object his was also effected, and the night's sport was ended at the cost of the lives of nine noble animals.

I might add that, although many other opportunities of working similar destruction were afforded me during the



THE HUNTER HUNTED.

continuance of my journey, no recurrence was perpetrated or permitted, knowing that I had already overstepped the bounds of true sportsmanship.

Upon several subsequent occasions, when suddenly coming upon musk-oxen at close range, I endeavored to obtain good photos of them, but with indifferent success, for the reason that either they or the artist seldom found each other's com-

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

pany congenial for a sufficiently long period to admit of the operation being successfully performed.

On one occasion, when I was encamped with two Indians on a bank of the Thelon River, I witnessed upon the opposite bank a most interesting combat between two large bulls—a third being present and acting as referee.

The combatants operated on the sandy flats of the river, whilst the third refereed the fight from the bank at the edge of the woods. The method of fighting was precisely that of two buck sheep. Standing head to head, they each walked backwards for ten or fifteen yards, and then, making a rush at each other, their skulls came together in violent contact, and this was repeated again and again, until one of the furies staggered under the blow of his opponent and showed signs of weakening. A pause was then made and, apparently by mutual consent, the two walked down to the river's brink and refreshed themselves with the cool water. After imbibing to their satisfaction they returned to the positions they had previously occupied, and resumed the combat as before, striking each other most terrific blows, the concussions of which, from where I stood, sounded like those of two heavy sticks of timber pounding together. Again the weaker of the bulls staggered and almost fell, and as he faltered his victor thrust him forcibly to one side and endeavored to gore him with his sharp, upturned horns. Refusing to acknowledge defeat, after a brief interval of rest the battle was resumed, but at every blow the weaker animal was worsted. Finally he was literally pounded out of the ring and left in a condition more dead than alive. The victorious bull and the referee then retired together.

## CHAPTER X.

### *MEETING WITH NATIVES.*

BORNE down by the river, we had launched on the bosom of Aberdeen Lake without effort, but not so easy a matter was it to find our way out. After spending a day in unsuccessful search, it was resolved to climb to the top of a hill a short distance back from shore, and view the country with our field-glasses.

From the summit, which was found by the aneroid to be four hundred feet above the lake, we obtained a magnificent view of the surrounding country, and could clearly trace the course of the river, winding from the base of the hill away to the northward. While my brother and I were thus engaged in viewing and sketching the country, hammering the rocks, tracing the lines of ancient sea-beaches, etc., which were here clearly defined at no less than seven different elevations, varying from 60 to 290 feet above the surface of the lake, the men were usefully employed in collecting black moss, which in this neighborhood was found in abundance.

Since entering the lake nothing more had been seen of the drift-wood, but on our return from the hill in the evening we found camp already pitched, and near it a big kettle of venison simmering over a fire of moss. More than this, some flour, a little of which still remained, had been baked into grease cakes by John, and with these, the venison and hot tea, we enjoyed one of the heartiest meals of our lives.

On the morning of the 29th, enshrouded by a dense fog, we entered the river, and though for a time we could see neither bank, we knew our course from my sketch made on the hill-top. Later in the day the weather, clearing, enabled us at

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

noon, as we entered the west end of Schultz Lake (so called in honor of the late Lieutenant-Governor of Manitoba), to ascertain our latitude, which was  $64^{\circ} 43'$  north. Along the north shore of this lake extended a high range of rocky, snow-clad hills, from four to five hundred feet in height. The south shore was also bold and rocky, but of considerably less elevation.

The next day the old story of looking for the "hole" out of the lake was repeated. At noon, while lunch was being prepared, my brother climbed a hill on the south shore, and from its summit discovered the outlet, four or five miles distant on the opposite side.

As soon as possible after my brother's descent we started straight across on our course for the river. Light wolfy clouds were already scudding across the sky, and after them dark masses began to roll up from the horizon and soon overshadowed us. We were evidently in for a blow, and in order to avoid being overtaken on the open lake, every man exerted himself to the utmost. No sooner had we reached shore than the storm burst upon us, but once in the river channel we were able to obtain shelter from the force of the gale, if not from the pelting rain.

We had now reached the second of two points of highest latitude attained on our journey, namely  $64^{\circ} 48'$  north. This as a high latitude does not, of course, amount to anything, but the attainment of a high latitude was not an object of our expedition. Scores of times the question has been asked of me, "How far north did you get?"

At this entrance to the river a large area of highly glaciated granitic rocks were observed, and the channel was well formed and deep. Both banks were high and rocky and the current swift. Notwithstanding the weather our canoes were kept in the stream, though it was with difficulty I was able to carry on the survey and keep my notes.

About seven miles down stream a very rocky rapid was



## MEETING WITH NATIVES

discovered. On examination we found it could be run for a considerable distance, and that for the remaining distance only a short portage would have to be made.

The contents of the canoes being all safely landed below the rapids, they themselves were run down by the Iroquois through the foaming waters. Had it not been for our good steersman Pierre many and many a rapid through which our little crafts were guided in safety would have caused us much laborious portaging. If a rapid could be run at all in safety, Pierre had the skill and nerve to do it. During the scores of times that he piloted our little fleet through foaming waters, I believe I am correct in saying that his canoe never once touched a rock; but that is more than can be said of those who followed him.

After reloading the canoes we sped down with the current at a rate of about eight miles an hour, with the wind beating the cold rain and the spray from the crest of the waves in our faces, our only consolation being that we were making miles on the journey. The shores continued to be bare, steep walls of rock; not a shrub was anywhere to be seen. About twelve miles below Schultz Lake, deciding to camp, tents were pitched, and within them our soaked and shivering party sought comfort. Little, however, was to be found, for the wind, which continued to increase in violence, drove the rain through our shelters, saturating blankets and making us generally miserable. The morning brought no improvement, for the storm still continued.

It was impossible to make a fire, supposing moss or other fuel could have been found, for the latter would have been saturated with water. A little alcohol still remaining, tea was boiled with it, and dried venison completed our menu. As those who have used it well know, this description of meat is not the most palatable. It is good, strong, portable food, but may be better compared to sole leather than any article of diet.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

By the morning of the first of September the rain had ceased and the clouds partially cleared away. The gale, however, still continued to blow so fiercely as to frequently whip clouds of spray off the surface of the river, so that we were quite unable to travel in canoes.

On the following morning, the wind having fallen sufficiently, the canoes were again pushed into the current, and we glided down stream, in a south-easterly direction, at the rate of seven miles an hour. The channel was deep and about three hundred yards in width, while the banks, continuing to be bold and high, were formed of dark Huronian schists and clay. The schists were chiefly micaceous and hornblendic, such as those occurring about the Lake of the Woods, and were found dipping at high angles.

Four or five miles to the east was a conspicuous range of snow-covered hills, probably six hundred feet in height, while between them and the river appeared a broad plateau, or a high level lake—which of the two we could not determine from the river bank. Time would not permit of our making side investigations when it was possible to be travelling, so on we sped, plying the paddles as well as being hurried along by the current. Thus for a time we made good progress, and as the long miles were quickly made the spirits of our little party were cheered.

Late in the forenoon, as we were rounding a bend in the river, an Eskimo in his kyack was sighted ahead, and much to our amusement he was soon much farther ahead. The poor fellow, seeing our fleet of canoes, and being himself alone, evidently thought his safest move was to get out of the way, and this he did, leaving us farther behind at every stroke, though we were doing our best to catch him.

I shouted to him in his native tongue, but it was of no use; he did not slacken his pace until, some distance down the river, he reached an Eskimo encampment of several topicks. Here he landed, hauled up his kyack, and informed the other

## MEETING WITH NATIVES

natives of our approach. All eyes keenly watched us. As we drew nearer they soon observed by our canoes and personal appearance that we were not Indians, as they had conjectured, but "Kudloonahs" (white men), the friends of the Eskimos. I shouted to them, "*Chimo! Kudloonah uragut pecawreunga tacko Inuit.*" To this they responded with cheers and wild gesticulations, and as we landed we were received with handshaking and great rejoicing. None showed the least sign of hostility. Indeed the ladies exhibited an embarrassing amount of cordiality, so much so that it was thought wise to make our visit as brief as possible. Having "greeted all the brethren," I proceeded to obtain what information I could from them regarding our road to the sea, and was much pleased to learn that we were close to the mouth of the river. I also obtained a sketch-map of our course thence to the "sea" or Hudson Bay. There was now no doubt as to the route. We were to reach the bay through Chesterfield Inlet, which was now not far distant, and at this certain knowledge we felt much encouraged. Besides this information, several skins were obtained from the natives, and also some skin clothing and a few trinkets. One very old man asked to be given a passage down the river a few miles to another native village. Placing him in our third or freighting canoe, and accompanied by an escort of three kyacks, we departed, amid a generous exchange of salutes.

We were pleased to learn from the natives that there were no more rapids or obstructions to be encountered. As we proceeded, however, we found the current both strong and swift, and quite rough in some places, but the Eskimos in their kyacks shot ahead from time to time and showed us the best channels. Sometimes they fell behind, evidently for the sake of having the opportunity of showing how quickly they could repass. Just as we had been able to paddle around the Indians in their bark canoes, so were these little fellows able to paddle around us. Soon after leaving the Eskimo camp

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

we went ashore. The river bank here was abrupt and high, in the neighborhood of one hundred feet, and on the side of this steep bank several new species of plants were collected. Marine shells and marl were also found thirty feet above the river, while on the top of the bank some Eskimo graves were discovered. Out of consideration for our native escorts, the graves, already broken by bears or wolves, were not molested. When lunch was announced, and we, seating ourselves, proceeded to eat with the customary plates, knives and forks, the Eskimos were very much amused, and stood watching our operations with great interest. Some refreshments were offered them, but to our surprise they declined, informing us that they had plenty of meat. For their own lunch they each took a lump of raw venison and a drink of water from the river, a very simple but no doubt wholesome meal.

Before re-embarking I secured several good photographs of the Eskimos. At first they were not prepared to be "shot" by the camera, but after explaining what I wished to do, they were pleased and amused to have their pictures taken, and changed their positions when I asked them to do so. By the time we had descended eight or ten miles farther down the river, our native escorts commenced cheering, hallooing and acting in a most hilarious manner. At first we wondered what had possessed them, but the cause of their strange actions was soon disclosed as we switched around a bend in the river and found ourselves close upon a large Eskimo village. When we pulled ashore this time there was no need of introducing ourselves. Our coming and our character had already been lustily proclaimed from half a mile or so up the river until the time of landing, so that we were received with great demonstrations.

Upon going ashore one of the first objects which attracted my attention was a small topick, or lodge, constructed of beautiful musk-ox robes. I felt inclined to doubt my own eyes, for it seemed such a strange waste of luxury. I pro-



ESKIMO WOMEN AND CHILDREN.



## MEETING WITH NATIVES

ceeded to this princely dwelling, and finding the owners—three young brothers—entered into negotiations with them for its purchase. The value asked in exchange for the robes being very moderate, they were secured and made into a snug bale. Next my attention was drawn to a pile of skins lying on the rocks. As I approached these skins, several Eskimos sat upon them, telling me as they did so that the owner was away hunting, and therefore I could not buy them. I assented, but asked to be allowed to look at them. Even this,



GROUP OF ESKIMOS.

however, was stoutly refused, as the owner was not present. I could not help admiring these fellows for their fidelity to one of their number. Some time was then spent in collecting information about the country, and in purchasing nicknacks of one kind and another. Presently the owner of the skins returned. He at once proceeded to open up his furs, which, with the exception of one wolf-skin, were all musk-ox robes, but of inferior quality. The four best skins were picked out and reserved, and the frowsy remnant then offered

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

to us. The poor skins, I told him, were not the ones we wanted, but for a time he positively refused to sell the good ones. After a little discussion, however, the crafty hunter came to the conclusion that he wanted a small kettle and some gun-caps (for he had an old gun), and so offered me one of the skins for these articles. We happened to have a kettle in which we had carried our butter, but which had now become only an article of extra baggage, so after some "serious consideration," I concluded to let him have the kettle and some caps for the skin.

It was then my turn to make him an offer. I produced a telescope, a jack-knife, and an old shirt, and offered them for the three remaining robes. The temptation proved too great; the skins were handed over, and the telescope, knife and shirt accepted with great delight and many thanks. Although it was now time to camp, and many pressing invitations were extended to us to spend the night at the village, it was thought wisest for the moral well-being of our party not to do so. Besides this, the surface of the country in the neighborhood of the village was exceedingly rough, being formed entirely of boulders. The Eskimo topicks were pitched upon the rocky shore, and it was thought we might find smother ground. Before we left the village one old Eskimo surprised us very much by making a remark in English. I said to him, "Oh! you understand English," whereat he made the amusing reply, "No, me no understand English." I tried then to find out from the old man where he had learned to speak our language, but the only reply I could get from him was that he had always been able to speak it. It may be that he had accompanied Sir George Back, Sir John Richardson, or Dr. Rae, on one of their Franklin search expeditions, or perhaps he had come from Hudson Bay, where he had been associated with some of the American whalers who frequent its waters.

Followed by many hearty cheers and "tabowetees" (farewells), we parted from our new but warm-hearted friends.



## MEETING WITH NATIVES

As before, we were accompanied by an escort of kyacks, but after a time they fell behind and returned to the village.

As we had been informed by the natives, so we soon found, we were at last at the mouth of the great Dubawnt, and gradually as we passed out into the broad, shallow delta and gazed over the deep blue, limitless waters beyond, the gratifying fact forced itself upon us that we had accomplished what we had started out to do, viz., to explore a route through the heart of the Barren Lands, where certainly no other white men, if indeed Indians or Eskimos, had ever passed. We were still, of course, a long way from being out of the Barren Land country, but once on the waters of Baker Lake, as we now were, the remainder of the road was to some extent known to us.

Before proceeding further with my narrative, I shall digress a little, believing that the reader will be interested by some particulars concerning the Eskimos. Having in former expeditions spent nearly two years among these people, I had abundant opportunity for studying their habits and customs of life. Some of the observations thus made I shall record in the next two chapters.



ESKIMOS IN KYACKS.



AN ESKIMO.



ESKIMO WOMAN.

## CHAPTER XI.

### *THE ESKIMOS.*

THE Eskimos, the most northerly inhabitants of the globe, are in many respects a strange and interesting people. In appearance they are short and well-built, with fat, round faces, usually almost entirely devoid of hair; the eyebrows and eyelashes are so scanty as to be scarcely discernible, giving to their brown, oily faces a singularly bare and homely appearance. Their hair, like that of the Indians, is black and straight. By the women it is worn plaited, and twisted up into three knots, one at either side of the head and one at the back. The men wear theirs short, and well down over their forehead for protection from the cold in winter and from the sun in summer.

While the Eskimos as a rule are short and homely in appearance, I have met with some very handsome, stalwart men, quite up to the standard height of Canadians, and a few pretty, charming women. Most of them have bright, soft brown eyes, which of themselves are features of beauty; but they serve these savages a better and more useful purpose, furnishing marvellous powers of vision and enabling their owners to see objects clearly at great distances. The eyes of the Anglo-Saxon, even when aided by the telescope, are not a match for the bright brown orbs of these "children of the cold."

The clothing of the Eskimo is made entirely of the skins of animals, chiefly of the seal and reindeer, the former being used for summer and the latter for the winter. They are nicely softened and dressed, and are neatly made up by the women, whose chief duty it is to provide clothing for their husbands and children.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

The cut of the native garb, both for the men and the women, is somewhat peculiar. A man's suit may briefly be described as follows: Commencing at the foundation, it consists of a pair of fur stockings, or duffles, covered by long waterproof moccasins which reach to the knees and are just met by short seal or deerskin trousers. The suit is completed by a jacket or jumper, made of the same material as the trousers, which is pulled on over the head, there being no opening in front to admit of its being put on like a coat. This jacket is provided with a hood, which takes the place of a cap, and may either be worn over the head or pushed back when not required.

In the summer season, a single suit of sealskin, made as above, constitutes a man's entire clothing, but in the winter time he wears two such suits, the inner one having the hair on the inside, and the outer one reversed.

The female costume is rather more complex in make-up than the above. The foot-wear is the same with both sexes, but in place of the trousers worn by the men, the women wear leggings and trunks, and in place of the jacket a peculiarly constructed over-skirt, having a short flap in front and a long train, in shape something like a beaver's tail, just reaching to the ground behind. The back of the over-skirt is made very full, so as to form a sort of bag, in which the mothers carry their children. Like the man's jacket, it is provided with a hood, but of much larger size, so as to provide shelter for both mother and child. The women are very fond of decorating their dresses with beads or other ornaments, and all their garments are made with great neatness.

Like many other savage people, the Eskimos, and especially the women, tattoo extensively. They do not all thus adorn themselves, but many of them have their faces, necks, arms or hands figured over in such a way as to give them a wild and savage appearance.

Many of the ladies, when in full dress, wear headbands,

## THE ESKIMOS

---

usually made of polished brass or iron, over their foreheads. These are held in position by being tied with a cord behind the head.

A stranger custom still is that of wearing stones in the cheeks, upon each side of the mouth. This practice is not universal with the Eskimos, but, as far as my knowledge extends, it is limited to those inhabiting the Mackenzie River district. The natives of this region have the reputation of being a bad lot, and it is said that when they are heard to rattle their cheek-stones against their teeth it is time to be on the look-out. The stones are cut in the shape of large shirt-studs, and are let through the cheeks by cutting holes for them.

Of the origin of the Eskimo people very little is known, but the most probable theory accounting for their existence on this continent is that they were originally Mongolians, and at some very early date crossed over the Behring Straits and landed in Alaska. This theory is based upon the fact that a similarity is traced between the Eskimo language and the dialects of some of the Mongolian tribes of northern Asia. A certain Eskimo tradition would rather tend to bear out this theory. It is something like this: A very long time ago there were two brothers made by the beaver and placed on an island in the Western Sea. There they lived, feeding upon birds which they caught with their hands, but at length food grew scarce, and the brothers, being hungry, fought for the birds they had taken. This quarrel led to a separation, and one brother went to live in the western portion of our "Great North Land," and became the father of the Eskimos in that region; while the other went still farther east, and became the father of the natives of Hudson Bay and Straits.

The range of the Eskimos is very large, extending completely across the northern part of North America—toward the south to about the sixtieth parallel of latitude, west of Hudson Bay, but east of the bay to about the fifty-fifth

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

parallel; while toward the north their range is almost unlimited. They are a very thinly scattered race, roving in small bands over great treeless wildernesses.

My first meeting with the Eskimos led me to think them a wild people. There were thirty-six of them, all women and children, piled into one of their "oomiacks," or skin boats, and all were whooping and yelling at the top of their voices, while those not paddling were swinging their arms (and legs, too) in the wildest manner. They were natives of Prince of Wales Sound, Hudson Straits, coming out from shore to meet the steamship *Alert*, which to them was a fiery monster of mystery.

Accompanying them was a party of men in kyacks, and all were preparing to board the ship without invitation; but the first officer, by brandishing a cordwood stick, and threatening to hurl it at them if they came too near—backing up the menace with the liberal use of some strong English which they did not understand—induced them to await his convenience to receive them.

When the ship was past some shoals near which she was steaming, and safely into harbor, the natives were allowed to come on board. They were an odd-looking crowd, some of them curiously dressed. One old grey-haired chief had apparently reached a stage of civilization in his attire not common among the Eskimos, for outside of his sealskin clothing he wore a long white cotton nightshirt, of which he evidently was very proud. The Eskimos are always pleased with the acquisition of white men's garments, but their ideas as to how and when they should be worn do not always agree with ours.

Early navigators have described the Eskimos as being savage tribes, greatly to be feared, and it is true that unfortunate crews have fallen into their hands and been ill-treated by them; but often in such cases the fault has been as much with the whites as with the poor savages. They

## THE ESKIMOS

really possess very simple, childish natures, but at the same time are characterized by quiet determination and deep jealousy, which, when aroused, are likely to lead to acts of violence. From my own observations I do not think that the Eskimos would, without considerable provocation or great temptation, harm anyone falling into their hands.

Though not usually quarrelsome or vicious, they do fight with each other, but only at appointed times, when all old grudges and differences of opinion are cleared up at once. On the appointed day, all the disagreeing parties of the camp pair off, and standing at arm's length from each other, strike turn about, and in this deliberate, systematic way take satisfaction out of each other until one of the combatants cries "Ta-bah" (enough).

The food of the Eskimo, as his name implies, is chiefly raw flesh; so the preparation of his meals is an extremely simple operation. The culinary department of civilization has no place in his life. Reindeer, seals, white whales and walruses are to the Eskimo the staple articles of food; but polar bears, Arctic hares and other animals, besides most of the Arctic birds, are considered equally good.

It is rather a novel, if not a repulsive, sight to witness an Eskimo feast. The occasion of the feast is the capture of a seal, or perhaps a reindeer, which, according to custom during the winter season, becomes common property, so that all are invited to the lodge of the fortunate hunter to share in the festivities.

The animal's carcass is trailed into the middle of the lodge, and when all the guests are assembled, they seat themselves on the floor about it. The carcass is then skinned by the host, and the pelt laid down to form a dish or receptacle for the blood.

All things being ready, the party, armed with knives, are invited to help themselves, and this they do with great dexterity, and continue to do—not until they have had enough.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

but until the supply is exhausted and absolutely nothing remains but the skin and skeleton. The blood, being considered very fine, is dipped up with skin cups or horn spoons, and consumed with the flesh.

The blubber, or outer layer of fat, which is found on most Arctic animals, is separated from the skin and cut into long strips about an inch square. Thus prepared, it is *swallowed*, not eaten. It is simply lowered down the throat as one might lower a rope into a well. During the summer season the blubber is not used as food, but is saved to be used for lighting purposes during the long, dark nights of the succeeding winter.

An Eskimo appears to have no idea of a limited capacity for food, but usually eats until the supply fails. I knew of one exception, however, where an old woman, after doing heroically, was forced to yield.

A party of Eskimos were having a big feast on the carcase of a whale, which they consider very good food, when this woman, in her ambition, overestimated her capabilities and ate until she became quite torpid. Her friends, supposing her to be dead, trailed her out and buried her in the snow, but a day or two afterwards she kicked off the snow that covered her and rejoined her astonished companions.

Next to stowage capacity, an Eskimo's stomach is noted for its powers of digestion. For instance, both the flesh and hide of the walrus are common articles of food with them, and yet these are so hard and gritty that when skinning or cutting up the animal one has to be continually sharpening his knife.

The skin of a walrus is a good deal like that of an elephant, and is from half an inch to an inch and a half in thickness; but, notwithstanding this, and the hardness of its structure, the little Eskimo children may often be seen running about gnawing pieces of walrus hide as if they were apples. Sometimes, however, they have no walrus hide or meat of any



## THE ESKIMOS

kind to gnaw, for occasionally in the spring season the condition of the snow and ice is such as to render hunting impossible, and though they store up meat in the fall for winter use, it is often exhausted before spring.

When this state of things occurs the condition of the Eskimos is deplorable in the extreme. They are forced to kill and eat their wretched dogs, which are even more nearly starved than themselves, and next they resort to their skin clothing and moccasins, which they soak in water until they become soft, though perhaps not altogether palatable.

Next to starvation, perhaps the most severe affliction the Eskimo has to endure is that of snow-blindness. This trouble is very prevalent in the spring season, and is caused by exposure to the strong glare of the sun upon the glistening fields of snow and ice. Snow-blindness is thus in reality acute inflammation of the eyes, and the pain caused by it is excruciating, being like what one would expect to suffer if his eyes were filled with hot salt. I speak from experience.

In order to guard against the occurrence of snow-blindness, the Eskimos wear a very ingenious contrivance in the form of wooden goggles. These are neatly carved so as to fit over the nose and close in to the sockets of the eyes. Instead of colored glasses, which the Eskimos have no means of getting, these goggles are made with narrow horizontal slits, just wide enough to allow the wearer to see through. Thus the excess of light is excluded, while the sight is not entirely obstructed.



WOODEN SNOW-GOGGLES.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

Like many people in southern Canada, the native of the frozen zone possesses a summer and winter residence, and occupies each in turn as regularly as the seasons change. His winter dwelling is built of snow; his summer lodge is made of oil-tanned seal or deerskins, neatly sewn together and supported by poles, if such can be procured, or pieces of drift-wood spliced together. A flap is left for the door, but there is no opening at the top, as in the Indian wigwam or tepee, for, having no fire, they have no need of a chimney.

The atmosphere of these tents or "topicks," as they are called, is usually very sickening to one not accustomed to them, for the skins of which they are made are dressed in their natural oil, in order to make them water-proof, and this has the effect of making them odorous to a degree.

Topicks vary in size according to the wealth or requirements of the occupants. Sometimes they are scarcely large enough to allow more than two of these little people to huddle into them, while others are capable of seating twenty persons. The commonest form of topick is that of a cone, very similar to an Indian tepee, but it is sometimes rectangular and built with vertical walls about four feet high.

The furniture of these summer dwellings is simple, consisting usually of a few skins lying about the rocky floor to serve as seats in the daytime and for beds at night, two or three sealskin sacks of oil, two shallow stone vessels used as lamps, a few hunting implements, some little deerskin bags used as ladies' work-baskets, several coils of sealskin line, a few pairs of moccasins scattered about, and at one side of the door the somewhat repulsive remains of a carcase consumed at the last meal. Such is the Eskimo's summer house.

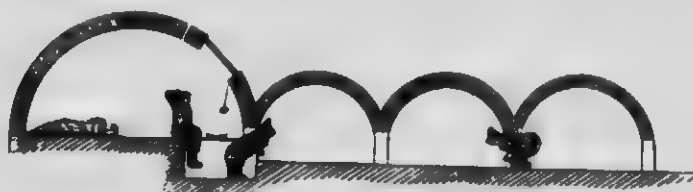
His winter dwelling in the snow is more interesting and curious. It is called an "igloo," and is built in the form of a dome with large blocks of snow. The common size of the dwelling apartment of an igloo is twelve feet in diameter

## THE ESKIMOS

and eight feet in height. This is approached by a succession of three or four smaller domes, connected by low archways, through which one has to crouch in order to pass.

The innermost archway, opening into the dwelling apartment, is about three feet high, and as one enters he steps down a foot or more to the level of the floor of the front portion of the dwelling. The back part, about two-thirds of the apartment, is three feet higher than the entrance.

The front or lower section of the igloo corresponds to a front hall, and it is here that the occupants, as they enter, beat the snow off their clothing, or remove their outer gar-



SECTION THROUGH IGLOO.

ments, when they wish to step up into the higher living apartment.

The floor of the entire igloo consists simply of snow, but in this upper apartment it is well covered with deerskin robes, so that it is not melted by the warmth of those who sit or lie upon it.

Above the doorway of the igloo is placed a window to admit light into the dwelling. This is formed of a large square slab of ice, neatly inserted into the wall of the dome, and it serves well the purpose for which it is intended, admitting a pleasant, soft light. Above the window a much-needed ventilating hole is usually made. This, because of the passing current of warm air, becomes rapidly enlarged, and requires to be frequently plastered up with snow.

Sometimes one of the long approaches or corridors is made to serve for two or three dwellings, each of which is connected

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

by low archways with the innermost of the smaller domes. Usually, opening out of the inner dome, each family has one or two small pantries, where they keep a supply of meat sufficient for a week or two.

The furniture of the snow-house is much the same as that of the skin topick already described, but the stone lamps come more into prominence, contributing light to the dwelling during the long, dark winter nights. These lamps are simply stone vessels, usually half-moon shaped, and formed neatly of some description of soft rock. The rounding side of the vessel is made much deeper than the other, which shoals up gradually to the edge. The wick of the lamp consists of dried, decomposed moss, pressed and formed by the fingers into a narrow ridge across the shallow or straight edge of the dish. In this position it absorbs the seal oil which is placed in the vessel, and, when lit, burns with a clear, bright flame, free from smoke. The lamp is then made self-feeding by suspending a lump of seal blubber above it, at a height varying according to the amount of light and consequent supply of oil required. This melts with the heat of the flame and drips into the vessel of the lamp. One lump keeps up the supply for a considerable length of time, the intensity of light being increased or diminished at will by lowering or raising the lump of blubber suspended above the flame.

Lamps are usually placed at either side of the entrance in the upper apartment. Both are kept burning brightly the greater part of the long, cold, dark days of winter, but during the hours of sleep they are "turned down," that is, the lumps of blubber are raised; or sometimes one lamp is extinguished and the other made to burn dimly. These lamps, though chiefly designed to furnish light, also contribute a considerable amount of heat to the igloos. It is often necessary to turn them down to prevent the snow walls from being melted by the heat, though the temperature outside may be 40 or 50 degrees below zero.

## THE ESKIMOS

Towards spring the snow-houses become very damp, and to prevent the roofs from being melted away fresh snow has to be added on the outside. Before they are abandoned for the skin tents they sometimes become so soft that they cave in upon the occupants, causing much sickness in the form of colds and pneumonia.

In their workmanship the Eskimos are remarkably neat. Wood is used for manufacturing purposes when it is available, but all they are able to procure is of a fragmentary nature, such as has drifted from some distant shore, or from the wreck of an unfortunate vessel. It is from this rough and scanty material they frame their kyacks, make their sleds, tent-poles, and the handles of their spears and harpoons; from it they fashion their bows and many other useful or ornamental things, and by exercise of untiring perseverance and skill they manage to produce marvellous results. For example, a paddle is often made of two or three pieces of wood, but these are joined together so neatly that if it were not for the seal thong lashings the joints would not be noticeable.

The lashings are put on green, or after having been softened in water, and are drawn tightly, so that when they become dry and shrink they produce strong and rigid joints.

The process by which these lashing-thongs and heavy lines for hunting purposes, as well as the small thread for sewing, are manufactured, is very interesting. A heavy harpoon line, used in the hunt for securing walruses, is made from the skin of the "square flipper" seal, a large species about eight feet long. For such use the skin is not removed from the carcase in the usual way, but is pulled off without cutting it, as one might pull off a wet stocking. The whole hide is thus preserved in the form of a sack. It is then placed in water, and allowed to remain there for several days, until the thin, black outer skin becomes decomposed. This, together with the hair, is readily peeled off, and a clean, white pelt remains.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

Two men then take the pelt in hand, and with a sharp knife cut it into one long, even, white line, by commencing at one end and cutting around and around until at length the other end is reached. One skin in this way will make three hundred feet of line. In this condition it is allowed to partially dry, after which it is tightly stretched and dried thoroughly in the sun. The result obtained is a hard, even line, three-eighths of an inch in diameter, but equal in strength to a three-inch manila rope.

I have seen such a line, when imbedded in the flesh of a walrus at one end, and spiked to the hard ice at the other by a stout iron pin, as well as being held by six men, plough a furrow six inches deep t'rough the ice, bend the spike and drag the six men to the edge of the ice, where the tug of war ended, the walrus, victorious, taking the unbreakable line with him into the deep.

Smaller seal thongs, such as are extensively used as lashings for komiticks, kyaeks, handles, etc., are made in much the same way as I have described, except that the hide of smaller seals is used, and often the process of removing the outer black skin is omitted, the hair being simply scraped off with a sharp knife or scraper.

Finer lines, such as those used for fishing, or for winding whip-stocks, or thread for sewing purposes, are manufactured from reindeer sinew. The best is that obtained from along the spine, which is always saved from the carcase. It is prepared for use by first drying and then rubbing till it becomes quite soft, when it is readily frayed out into fine fibres, in which condition it is used for fine needlework; but when coarser thread or stout cord is required, these individual fibres are plaited together with wonderful neatness and rapidity. One woman can make fifty or sixty yards of this cord or thread in a day.

With the Eskimos all joints of whatever kind are secured by these thongs, they having no nails or screws to supply their

## THE ESKIMOS

place. In making a komitick the cross slats are all secured to the runners by seal thongs. In framing a kyaack the numerous pieces are lashed together, usually with seal or deerskin, though sometimes, and preferably, with whalebone.

The Eskimo kyaack, or canoe, consists of a light frame neatly made from all sorts of scrap-wood, and strongly jointed together in the way just described. The frame having been completed, it is then covered with green skins, either of seal



ESKIMO KYACKS.

or deer, dressed, with the hair removed. The skins are joined to each other as they are put on by double water-tight seams, and are drawn tightly over the frame, so that when they dry they become very hard, and as tight as a drum-head.

A full-size kyaack thus made is about twenty-two feet long, a foot and a half wide, and a foot deep. It is completely covered over on the top, excepting the small hole where the paddler sits, so that though an extremely cranky craft in the hands of a novice, it is used in perfect safety, even in very

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

rough water, by an expert. Indeed the Eskimos have an arrangement by which they can travel while almost submerged in the water. They have a thin waterproof parchment coat which they pull on over their heads in rough weather. This they place on the outside of the rim of the opening of the kyack, and tie securely, so that if the boat were to turn upside down the water could not rush in.

An Eskimo in his kyack can travel much faster than two men can paddle in an ordinary canoe. I have known them to make six miles an hour in dead water, whereas four miles would be good going for a canoe.

The "oomiack," or woman's boat, is a flat-bottomed affair of large carrying capacity. Like the kyack, it is a skin-covered frame, the many pieces of which are lashed together with thongs of skin or whalebone; but instead of being covered on top it is open, is of much broader model and not so sharp at the ends. It is chiefly used by the women for moving camp from place to place, but is never used in the hunt. It is essentially a freighting craft, whereas the kyack is used only for hunting or speedy travel. Oomiacks are often made large enough to carry thirty or forty people. They are propelled by ordinary paddles, not by the long double-bladed ones used with the kyacks.

The komitick is a sled of rather peculiar design, consisting simply of two parallel runners, twelve or fourteen feet long, built of wood and placed about eighteen inches apart, upon the top of which are lashed a number of crossbars or slats. The runners are shod either with ivory or with mud, the latter answering the purpose exceedingly well. The mud covering is, of course, put on in a soft state, when it can be easily worked and formed into proper shape. When the mud is on, and the surface nicely smoothed off, it is allowed to freeze, and speedily becomes as hard as stone. In order to complete the vehicle and put it in good running order, there is one thing to be done; the shoeing, whether of mud or







THE AUTHOR IN ESKIMO COSTUME.

## THE ESKIMOS

ivory, must be covered with a thin coating of ice, in order to do which the Eskimo overturns the komitick, fills his spacious mouth with water from some convenient source, and then from his lips deposits a fine stream along the runner, where, quickly freezing, it forms a smooth, glassy surface.

During the winter season the komitick forms an important factor in the Eskimo's life. It is drawn by a team, not of horses, nor even reindeer, but of dogs. The number of animals forming a team varies greatly, sometimes consisting of not more than three good dogs, but at other times of fifteen or more attached to a single sled. Each dog is fastened to a single line, the length of which varies according to the merits of its owner. Thus the best dog in the team acts as leader, and has a line twenty or twenty-five feet in length.

In order to control the team, the driver carries a whip of somewhat extraordinary dimensions. This instrument of torture has a short wooden handle, only about eighteen inches long, but what is lacking in stock is more than made up in lash, for this latter, made of the hide of the square flipper seal, is nearly thirty feet in length. An Eskimo can handle his whip with great dexterity, being able not only to reach any particular dog in the pack, but to strike any part of its body, and with as much force as the occasion may require.

Another curious Eskimo practice, observed by the women, is that of daily chewing the boots of the household. As already intimated, these boots, or moccasins, are made of oil-tanned seal or deerskins. The hair is always removed from the skin, of which the foot of the moccasin is made, but not always from that part forming the leg. However, the point is, that these moccasins, after having been wet and dried again, become very hard, and the most convenient or effective—or possibly the most agreeable—way of softening them seems to be by mastication. Whatever may be the reason for adopting this method, the fact is that nearly every morning the native women soften the shoes of the family most beauti-

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

fully by chewing them. What to us would seem the disagreeable part of this operation cannot be thoroughly understood by one who has not some idea of the flavor of a genuine old Eskimo shoe.

In one of my trips in the land of the Eskimo I had an escort composed not only of men and women, old and young, but also of little children, several of whom could not have been more than five or six years old, and it was marvellous to see the powers of endurance of these little creatures, for they travelled along with the rest of the party, a distance of twenty-five miles, having no other object in view than that of seeing the white stranger.

The "shin-ig-bee," or Eskimo sleeping-bag, is an article essential to the comfort of the traveller when making long overland journeys during the cold winter season. It consists of a long, oval, waterproof skin bag, lined with another of similar shape, made of soft but heavy winter deerskins. The opening is not at the top, but near it, across one side, and is made with flap and buttons, so that it can be closed up as closely as desired.

When the traveller is provided with this kind of a bed he does not trouble himself to make a snow lodge for the night, as without it he would have to do, but he simply crawls into his "shin-ig-bee," buttons up the opening on the windward side, and goes to sleep, no matter what the weather or temperature may be. With the mercury at 40 below zero a man may in this way sleep warm and comfortable, without any fire, out upon the bleak frozen plains.



ESKIMO SLEEPING-BAG.

## CHAPTER XII.

### *OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS.*

DEER hunting is perhaps the most favored and remunerative occupation of the Eskimos. In some districts seals and other animals are extensively sought after, but the reindeer is the universal stand-by. It is hunted with the bow and arrow or spear, and with guns when these can be obtained.

Having already stated that the only wood available by the Eskimos is broken fragments of driftwood, the inquiry may arise, where do they get material from which to make bows? The answer is, that lacking material for making such bows as are ordinarily used, their ingenuity comes to the rescue and designs a composite bow, which answers the purpose equally well. This implement of the chase is, in the first place, made either of pieces of wood or of horn, neatly joined together. In order to give it strength and elasticity, a stout plaited sinew cord is stretched from end to end around the convexity of the bow, and then twisted until it is brought to the required tension. By this mode of construction, when the bow is drawn, the wood or horn is only subjected to a compressive strain, while the sinew thong takes up the tension.

Thus very powerful bows are made, though of rough material; but in order to use them with effect in killing deer, the sagacity of the hunter is often severely tested, since with the Eskimo there is no cover behind which he can hide or creep upon his prey. The hunter's first precaution is to keep the deer to windward, for the moment they catch the scent of an enemy they are off. To get within range of the wary animals upon the open plains or rocky barrens is often

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTIC OF CANADA

a difficult matter. A common method when several hunters are together is for some to take positions in concealment, while the others drive the deer their way, causing them to



DOG-WHIP, WALRUS TUSKS AND BOWS AND ARROWS.

pass within range of the deadly shafts. At a moderate distance an Eskimo with his ingeniously constructed bow can drive an arrow its full length into a deer.

Occasionally vast herds of deer, numbering many thou-

## OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS

sands, are met with, and at such times their numbers appear to give them confidence. The hunter then has no trouble in approaching them, but may go up and kill as many as he desires, either with bow and arrow or with spear.

The spear, however, is chiefly used for killing in the water. At certain seasons of the year, when migrating, the deer cross streams, rivers or lakes in great numbers, and these crossings are commonly effected year after year in the same place. The hunter, knowing of these places, lies in wait, and often from his kyaak spears large numbers as they are swimming past.

When more deer are killed than are required for immediate use, the carcasses are "cached," that is, they are covered over by piles of stones to preserve them from the wolves and foxes, and the place of their burial is marked, so that during the succeeding winter and spring, if food becomes scarce, these meat stores may be resorted to. When required, the meat thus stored is often quite tainted or decomposed, but it has to be pretty bad when a hungry Eskimo will not eat it.

### SEAL HUNTING.

Seal hunting is a most curious and interesting form of sport. The seals are hunted in entirely different ways at different times of the year.

During the entire winter season they keep holes open through the shore ice, but because of the depth of snow they are not seen until the warm spring sun exposes their hiding places. The Eskimo hunter has, however, a way of finding them before this. He harnesses a dog, trained for the work, and, armed with seal harpoon, leads him out to the snow-covered field, where the two walk in a zigzag course, until the sagacious animal catches the scent of the seal and takes his master straight to its secret abode.

Here, under the hard crusted snow, it has formed for itself quite a commodious dwelling, but, unlike the Eskimo snow-

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

house, its doorway opens into the water, instead of into the air. The doorway, which is in the form of a round hole, just large enough to admit the seal, is kept from freezing up by the wary animal, which ever keeps itself in readiness, upon the slightest suspicion of danger, to plunge in.

Usually upon the arrival of the hunter, the seal, if at home, hearing the footsteps above, quickly vacates the premises. The Eskimo, then, taking advantage of its absence, ascertains the exact location of the hole in the ice by thrusting his long, slender spear down through the snow. When the exact position of the hole is found, its centre is marked by erecting a little pinnacle of snow directly above it.

This done, a long and tedious wait follows, during which time the patient hunter often suffers much from the cold, for he is obliged to remain quite still, not uncommonly from early morning until evening. In order to keep his feet from freezing while thus remaining for hours upon the snow, a deer-skin bag is commonly used to stand in.

During the interval of the seal's absence from home the doorway becomes frozen over, and it is on account of this fact that the hunter is made aware of its return, for when the seal comes back and finds its hole crusted over, it commences to blow upon the ice to melt it. This is the hunter's long-desired signal, and the moment he hears it, he places the point of his harpoon at the mark on the snow, and thrusts the weapon vertically down into the hole, almost invariably with deadly effect. The seal, thus harpooned in the head, is instantly killed, and is hauled out by the line attached to the spear.

Some seasons, when the ice is covered by a great depth of snow, the dogs are not able to scent the seals' houses, and then the Eskimo has to depend upon other sources for food, or else go on short rations.

In the spring, as the snow disappears, the seals' winter quarters are demolished, and they themselves are exposed to



## OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS

view. Then the Eskimo is obliged to resort to other methods of getting at them. When one is observed, the direction of the wind is noted; then the hunter, keeping himself to leeward of the seal, walks to within about a quarter of a mile



ESKIMO HUNTERS.

of it. Beyond this he begins to crouch, and advances only when the seal's head is down. The seal is one of the most wide-awake of all animals, and has the habit of throwing up its head quickly every few seconds to guard against danger.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

When its head is down upon the ice its eyes are shut, and it is said that in these brief intervals it takes its sleep. However this may be, the hunter, by carefully watching the seal's movements, is able, without much difficulty, to get within about two hundred yards of it; but for closer quarters other tactics are necessary, and here the real sport begins.

The hunter lies down at his full length upon the ice. Seal takes Eskimo, who is able to *talk seal* perfectly, to be one of its kinsmen; and indeed there is a great deal of resemblance between the genera, for both are similarly clothed, and the Eskimo, living largely upon the flesh and oil of the seal, is similarly odorous. As the two lie there upon the ice, a most amusing sort of conversation is kept up between them. Seal makes a remark and flips his tail. Eskimo replies in a similar manner, making the gesture with his foot, and at the same time throws himself a little forward. Seal soon has something further to say, and again flips his tail. Eskimo replies as before, and closes up slightly farther the distance between them.

When the seal's head is down, the hunter, who ever keeps his eye on his prey, is able to approach still nearer by dragging himself forward upon his elbows. This manœuvring goes on for some time, until the distance between the performers has been reduced to a few yards, and sometimes to a very few feet.

When near enough to make a sure shot, the Eskimo takes his bow and arrow from his side and sends a shaft through the head of his outwitted companion. Sometimes, instead of the bow and arrow, a harpoon is used with equal effect.

I knew an Eskimo who was so expert at this kind of sport that he was able to catch seals with his teeth.

In order to secure one by shooting, as just described, it is necessary to finish it instantly, for if only shot through the body, or even through the heart, it will throw itself into its hole and thus be lost.

## OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS

During the season of open water still another method of seal hunting has to be adopted. There is now no ice to perform upon, so the *kyack* has to take its place, and in this light craft the Eskimo pursues his prey in the open sea or in the channels of water among the ice.

The weapon now used is not the bow, but a specially designed style of harpoon, which may be thrown long distances from the hand. The bow and arrow are useless, because of the difficulty of instantly killing the seal by a shaft aimed from a *kyack*. This harpoon is a light form of spear, having an adjustable ivory head to which is attached a long plaited sinew line. This line is wound on the handle of the harpoon, and attached to the end of it is a small float.

When a seal makes its appearance within twenty or thirty yards of the hunter, the harpoon, thus arranged, is thrown, and if the seal is struck, the ivory head, which becomes buried in the flesh, is detached from the shank, and as the seal plunges about, or dives, the line is quickly unwound from the floating handle.

Unless killed outright, the seal quickly disappears with line and float: but as it can remain under water only a few minutes at a time, it must soon reappear, and as it nears the surface, the little float comes to the top and shows the hunter where to prepare for the next charge. Thus the poor wounded animal's chances of escape are small.

### WALRUS HUNTING.

Perhaps the most exciting and dangerous sport of the Eskimo is that of hunting the walrus.

This animal, sometimes called the sea-horse, is large, powerful and often vicious. It is considered valuable both as food and for the supply of ivory which its immense tusks yield. The walrus is hunted chiefly from the *kyack*, either in open water, in the neighborhood of sandy shores, or about the edge

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

of floating ice, upon which it delights to lie and bask in the sunshine.

A special equipment is required for this kind of hunting. It consists, besides the kyack and paddle, of a large harpoon, a heavy line with box in which to coil it, a large inflated sealskin float, and a long lance. This walrus harpoon is an ingeniously devised weapon, consisting of an ivory shank fitted to a block of the same material by a ball and socket joint. These are stiffly hinged together by stout sealskin thongs, and the block is then permanently attached to a wooden handle about four feet in length. The ivory shank, which is about fifteen inches long, is slightly curved, and tapers to a rounded point at the end remote from the handle. To this point is again fitted an ivory head, about four inches long, let into which is an iron or steel blade. Through the centre of the ivory head a heavy line is passed and strongly looped. Then, the shank and head being in position, the line is drawn tightly and fastened to the wooden handle by an ivory pin and socket catch. The remaining portion of the line is neatly coiled, and is provided at the end with a small loop.

The line used is that made from the skin of the square flipper seal, as already described, and may be two or three hundred feet in length, though sometimes not so long. The line box is simply a small round parchment-covered frame, about the size of the lid of a cheese-box, and is fastened to the top of the kyack, behind the paddler.

The sealskin float is a peculiar-looking object, consisting of the entire skin of a seal, removed from the carcase, as before described, without cutting it. The hair is removed from the pelt, which is then dressed as black parchment. The natural opening at the mouth of the skin sack is provided with an ivory nozzle and plug. By blowing into the nozzle the skin is inflated, and may be kept in that condition by inserting the plug. At the tail-end of the float is an ivory

## OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS

cross-head, to which the loop at the end of the harpoon line may be readily attached.



1. Walrus Harpoon. 2. Walrus Lance. 3. Seal Harpoon. 4. Seal Spear.  
5. Bird Spear. 6. Small Seal Harpoon.

The lance completes the walrus hunter's equipment. This instrument is formed of a long iron or ivory bar having a

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

steel blade point. The bar is fitted to a wooden handle by a ball and socket joint, and stiffly hinged with thongs as in the case of the harpoon. The object of the joint is to prevent the lance from being broken when thrust into a walrus, as otherwise it would be by the animal plunging about.

Equipped as above, the Eskimo hunters go out during the season of open water in pursuit of walruses, which, feeding upon clams, are usually found about sandy shores or islands. Single animals are sometimes found, but more commonly they are in small herds. When feeding they remain in about the same place, but can stay under water for only about three minutes at a time. They come to the surface to breathe, sport about for a short time, then go down to the bottom and dig clams from the sand for some three minutes, rising again to the surface. The Eskimo, taking advantage of their necessity, advances on them only when they are busily occupied at the bottom of the sea. When a walrus reappears at the surface, the hunter, who with harpoon in hand and line attached to float awaits its return, hurls his harpoon with great force and precision, burying it deeply in the walrus's flesh.

The wounded monster, maddened by pain, plunges into the water, dives to the bottom, and endeavors to escape. The plunging readily causes the ball and socket joint of the harpoon to give, and this allows the head of the harpoon, which is buried in the animal, to become detached and form a button on the end of the harpoon line.

The detached handle floats upon the water, but the line is securely fastened to the body of the walrus, which, in trying to escape, takes with him the line and attached inflated seal-skin; but though he may take this buoy under, and keep it down for a short time, he cannot do so long.

Soon it reappears at the surface, and the hunter, seeing it, makes for the spot and awaits the returning walrus. The moment his head appears, harpoon or lance is hurled at it

## OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS

as before, and if not with fatal results, the same manœuvres are repeated. In this way often two or three harpoon lines and floats are attached to one walrus, but when so hampered it is considered well secured, and is finally despatched by the long, keen lance.

When, however, the attack is made in the neighborhood of heavy ice, as it frequently is, the hunt is much less likely to result successfully. Because of the floating crystal, the hunter often finds it difficult to follow the movements of his game, and even if successful in this and in placing a harpoon or two, he is often defeated in the end by the line being torn from the float, which has become fast in the broken ice. Thus once freed, the wounded animal usually makes good his escape.

Occasionally these walrus contests result disastrously to the hunter, for the sea-horse is by no means a passive, harmless creature, submitting without resistance to the attacks of its enemies. Frequently one—or a number of them together—will make a charge upon the assailants, attacking them viciously with their huge tusks, which, if brought in contact with an Eskimo, are likely to make a sorry-looking object of him. Of course, through long experience and practice in the chase, the Eskimo hunters become very expert in dodging and foiling a charge, but sometimes they are caught and roughly handled by these uncouth monsters of the sea.

Upon one occasion an old hunter, named Coto, whom I knew, met with a serious accident while hunting walruses in his kyack. A number of them charged upon him suddenly, and he being unable to get out of their way, his frail craft was broken and torn to shreds, and his body was frightfully bruised and lacerated before he made his escape. The poor fellow recovered, however, but only after months of sore suffering.

For a short time during the autumn season the sea-horse is hunted without the assistance of the kyack. The new ice

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

being thin, the walruses break up through it at any place, and sport about in the water-holes thus formed. Then the hunters—for several of them usually go together—march out upon the ice and attack them from the edge of the water-holes. This method of hunting is, however, rather dangerous, as the animals have an ugly habit of noting the position of their assailants, then disappearing below the water, and in a moment presenting themselves below the ice at the spot where the men stand.

The Eskimos, who are familiar with this manœuvre, change their position the moment one of the crafty brutes goes down, and stand, harpoons in hand, ready to receive him when he returns crashing through the ice with deadly designs upon his craftier adversaries.

It is an easier matter to harpoon a walrus thus in the ice than it is to secure him, for here the "oweta," or float, cannot be used to advantage, and it is no easy matter to hold a three thousand pounder of the sea. However, this is attempted, and when one or more harpoons are made fast to the walrus the ends of the lines are spiked down to the ice by stout spikes, and in this way the brute is very powerfully anchored; but, as I have before stated, in spite of all that can be done, he often breaks away and takes the lines with him into the deep.

### POLAR BEAR HUNTING.

Polar bear hunting is an extremely dangerous and exciting sport. An Eskimo rarely ever cares to tackle a bear single-handed, but two men, armed with lances, do not hesitate to attack this monarch of the north.

The method adopted in hunting a polar is as follows: Two men, armed only with lances, approach from opposite sides at the same time. Then, as they close upon it, and the bear charges either man, the other rushes forward with his lance. Thus they let out its life-blood. It requires cool heads and steady nerves to cope successfully with a polar in this



## OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS

way, but both of these characteristics the Eskimos possess in a marked degree, and it is comparatively seldom that accidents happen while they are thus engaged.

These bears, which live almost entirely upon seals, are usually found near the seashore, and often out some distance, swimming in the water, where they can live for a considerable length of time. The Eskimos attack them here as well as upon the land, but in the water they are treacherous enemies to deal with, as they are expert swimmers and divers. They are very liable to surprise one by suddenly disappearing only to reappear at embarrassingly close quarters.

The Eskimo custom in bear hunting is, that whoever first sees a bear is the owner of the carcase, no matter who kills it; but the skin is divided up among the several hunters.

A bearskin is so heavy that an Eskimo has no special object in preserving it whole, but he finds the greatest use for it when cut into small pieces. In this condition it is commonly used by hunters as mats, which they tie under them when crawling over the ice after seals, or across the wet plains after deer. The pieces of bearskin act as skates, upon which they can easily drag themselves along.

### BIRD HUNTING.

The Eskimo method of hunting birds is chiefly with a spear of somewhat peculiar design. It is in all about five feet long, and consists of a wooden handle terminated at one end by a slender barbed ivory or iron rod, sharply pointed. About half way up the handle, three pointed barbed ivory fingers are securely fastened. The handle is then fitted into a wooden socket, which is held in the hand, and from which the spear is thrown. It is claimed that by means of the wooden socket the spear can be thrown with greater precision than by the bare hand, to which it would adhere more or less. However that may be, an Eskimo can hurl his bird-spear a marvellously long distance and with deadly effect.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

If the point of the spear misses the bird, one of the side fingers is likely to pierce it or catch it between the fingers and the spear handle.

In this way ptarmigan, ducks, and other land and sea fowl are obtained in considerable numbers. They are usually speared while sitting in flocks upon the snow or in the water, but they are also frequently killed in this way when on the wing. Sometimes the bow and arrow is used for bringing down the feathered game, but the spear is the instrument chiefly employed.

### FISHING.

Fish are caught both by spearing and with the hook. The latter is of the crudest design and is used in trolling. A troll consists of a heavy iron hook, fastened to the face of a small ivory disk, to which is attached a fine, strong line, made from plaited deerskin sinews.

Fish are not, however, caught so much with the hook as they are by the spear. Indeed, it is chiefly by means of the harpoon and spear that the Eskimo larder is supplied. The fish-spear is a kind of three-pronged barbed fork, fastened to a handle, and is used chiefly for spearing fish through the ice, and with good results in the hands of an expert.

I tried my hand at fish spearing in the north, but lacked the patience necessary for success. Many times, however, I purchased from the Eskimos the magnificent trout and white-fish by which their efforts were rewarded.

The Eskimo method of spearing is as follows: First, the most favorable spot in the lake or river is selected, and then a hole is cut through the ice. With some kind of a bait, which they lower into the water by means of a string, they endeavor to attract the fish to the hole. When they appear they are thrust through by the spear and hauled out upon the ice. Great numbers of beautiful fish are caught by the Eskimos in this way during the fall and winter seasons.

## OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS

Trapping is not extensively followed, unless by the Eskimos living within reach of the Hudson's Bay Company's posts, perhaps because of the inefficiency of the native traps, but also owing to the comparatively slight value to the Eskimos of the animals which may be caught. For instance, the wolf is an animal little sought for, because his flesh is not considered good food, and his skin is no better for clothing than the skin of the deer, which is much more easily procured. So also with the fox. Both wolves and foxes are, however, caught to some extent by "dead fall" traps, built of stones, or of snow, and so arranged that when the animal enters the trap and touches the bait, a heavy stone is caused to fall and kill or imprison him.

### AMUSEMENTS.

The Eskimo, or "Innuït," as he calls himself, being of a jovial, merry disposition, has various forms of amusement. A common one among the men is that of competing with each other in throwing the harpoon at a mark on the snow. With such practice they become powerful and expert harpooners.

A rather amusing incident happened in this connection at one time during my Eskimo experiences. I, too, had been exercising myself in the art of harpoon throwing, and one day, having become somewhat expert, was thus amusing myself when a party of natives came along. One of their number, doubtless supposing me to be a novice, stood up at what he thought a safe distance, and cried, "*Attay me-loo-e-ak look!*" (Go ahead, throw). Promptly accepting the challenge, I hurled my harpoon, which made so straight for the astonished man's breast that he did not know which way to jump, and barely got out of the way in time to save himself. As the shaft passed him and went crashing through a flour barrel behind where he had stood, his companions had a great laugh at his expense.

Another source of much amusement is the game of foot-

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTIC'S OF CANADA

ball, which they play with the bladder of a walrus. Their game is played neither according to Rugby nor Association rules, but wholly without rule or system. Men and women, old and young, join in the chase after the ball with equal delight. "Here a woman, carrying her child on her back, may be seen running at full speed after the ball, and the next moment lying at full length with her naked child floundering in the snow a few feet beyond her. A minute later the



ESKIMO GAMES AND TOYS.

child is in its place, and the mother, nearly choking with laughter, is seen elbowing her way after the ball again."

A popular kind of indoor sport, played much during the long days of winter, is a game something like our old game of cup and ball. It is played with a block of ivory, cut so as to somewhat resemble the form of a bear, which it is supposed to be. The ivory is drilled full of holes in a regular and systematic way, and to the neck of the block an ivory pin,

## OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS

four or five inches in length, is attached by means of a sinew cord about a foot long. To prevent twisting of this cord, a little ivory swivel is inserted in the middle of it, and the game is played by swinging up the ivory block and catching it upon the pin. The various holes in the block count differently, so that there is really a good deal of skill in the game.

Running and wrestling are sometimes indulged in, though not often continued with interest.

The children play among themselves much as they do in the civilized south. A favorite amusement is that of playing house, at which they may be seen busily engaged almost any pleasant summer day about an Eskimo village. The play-houses consist simply of rings of stones, and for dolls the Eskimo children are content with pretty pebbles or chips of wood or ivory. The actors, with their families, go visiting from one house to another, and have their imaginary feasts and all the rest just as our children have.

At Cape Prince of Wales, Hudson Straits, the Eskimos have been observed to play at the game of tilting. For this sport a very large igloo is built, having a great pillar in the centre of it. Ivory rings are hung from the roof, and the players, armed with spears, walk rapidly round the pillar, and vie with each other in catching the rings on their spears.

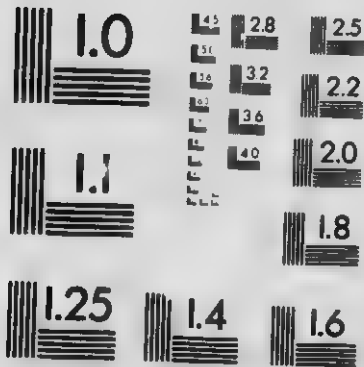
The people are not noted for being musical, though they have some songs.

The home or family circle is, as a rule, a happy one. It is not broken up by the brawling sot, nor is it often the scene of poverty and want. Never is this the case while the rest of the community have plenty. All families share alike in times of famine, and in seasons of plenty all rejoice together. Thus there is no such thing as class distinction among them, but all are upon an equal footing; every man provides for the wants of his own family by hunting. They have, therefore, no need for workmen's unions, nor for protective associations,



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 21



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609  
716 482-1000  
716 288-1989 Fax

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

but all live together in peace and unity. Of course, I am here speaking in a general way, for I have already spoken of occasional fights which take place.

The Eskimo marriage is an exceedingly simple institution, and is not performed in any ceremonious way. It is purely a love union, requiring only the sanction of the parents of the bride. When a young man and young woman come to the conclusion that they were made for each other, and desire to become one, having the consent of the girl's parents, they simply take each other and start up an igloo of their own. Eskimo brides are usually very young, and often very bonnie creatures. They lose much of their beauty, however, in early life, and at about forty mature into ugly old dames.

An Eskimo family rarely consists of more than three children, and these are carried in the hood upon their mother's back until they are about two years old. During this time they have no clothing apart from their mother's. Newborn infants are licked by their mother's tongue, and are sometimes kept in a rabbitskin or bag of feathers for a time before being carried upon the mother's back.

It is usual for a man to have only one wife, though it is not uncommon for him to have two, or even three, if he can provide for them. The first Eskimo encountered on our journey, as I have related, had two wives, each having three children. As a rule the men are faithful to their wives, although sometimes they trade with each other for a few weeks or months, and afterwards receive again their first loves.

If any member of the family is seriously ill, a peculiar kind of prayer is repeated over the afflicted one by the father or mother of the family. The prayer—for it can hardly be called anything else—is loaded with superstition. The parent prepares for the ceremony by placing a "poalo," or mit, upon the left hand. Then, bending over the afflicted one, he or she mutters, wails and gesticulates in the strangest manner,



## OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS

also blowing with the mouth and motioning the departure of the evil spirit. This kind of audible supplication is often carried on for a considerable length of time.

The Eskimos, like almost every other people under the sun, possess some form of worship, and believe in a spirit world. They believe in the existence somewhere of good and evil spirits which govern and control this world. The Great Good Spirit (*Cood-la-pom-e-o*), they believe, dwells in an upper world, of which the sky is the floor; but the evil spirits, governed by their chief, "Tornarsuk," dwell in a world beneath ours, which forms a kind of great roof over the world below. The earth and this under-world are connected with each other by certain mountain clefts, and by various entrances from the sea. The spirits of those who meet with violent death go to dwell with *Cood-la-pom-e-o*, in the upper world; but for those who die from other causes there is a place prepared below, in the land of plenty, with the evil spirits.

These latter deities are supposed to have the greater power of the two upon earth, and consequently their favor is sought, and to them supplication is usually made, though over certain forces, events and circumstances the Great Good Spirit is supposed to have control. For example, he is believed to be the deity governing the frosts, so that in the fall of the year, when the ice is insufficiently strong for hunting purposes, his favor is invoked.

Communication with the spirits is usually held through wizards, or "angokokes," who are looked upon as wise men by the people, and are appointed to fulfil this function. They are ordained for their sacred calling when youths, and as a distinguishing mark of their profession wear upon their backs a string of ornaments, mostly made of seal or deerskin. These are given them at the various places visited by them in recognition of their office. The angokokes are appointed because of their qualifications. There may be a number of

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

them in the same community, but some rise to much greater distinction than others.

These wizards are said to be taught from youth by one of the deputy chief friends, named "Tornat," and some of them are supposed to have great power with the spirits.

At times, when the people are threatened with famine, or are in distress of any kind, the angokoke is requested to intercede for them. Supposing it is food that is wanted, he arranges for an interview with Tornarsuk, the chief of the devils. In order to do this, the angokoke, accompanied by one other man, goes down to the water's edge in the early morning at the hour of low tide. Here his companion binds him in a doubled-up position, so that his knees meet his face, and lashes him up with stout thongs so tightly that he is unable to move hand or foot. In this helpless condition his companion leaves him, with his walrus harpoon lying by his side and the rising waters lapping at his feet. What immediately follows only the angokoke knows, but I have been informed by the wizards themselves—and it is fully believed by the Eskimo people—that the devil comes to his rescue and releases him from his bonds, but at the same time seizes the harpoon found on the ground and thrusts it through his breast. The point projecting through his coat behind, and blood trickling down in front, the excited wizard rushes up from the shore to the village, trailing behind him the harpoon line. He bursts into the first igloo in a frenzied condition, snorting and blowing like a walrus. As he enters all sharp tools are quickly put out of sight, so that the angokoke may not harm himself with them, and at the same time water is sprinkled on his feet. This done, he bounds out of the igloo, and as he does so the occupants seize the harpoon line trailing behind, but are not able to hold him, for he is as strong as a walrus.

The magician then enters the next igloo, where a like performance is repeated, and in the same manner the round

## OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS

of the village is made, but none is able to hold the excited man. Having completed the round of the dwellings in the village, he returns to the seashore, where it is said he is again met by Tornarsuk, who extracts the harpoon from his breast and assures him that the prayers of the people shall be heard, and that plenty of walrus shall be sent to satisfy their hunger.

Whether or not Tornarsuk is as good as his word we can only conjecture, but the poor Eskimo pagans have great faith in the intercessory powers of their angokoke.

Intercession is sometimes made to the Good Spirit, and as before, the angokoke acts as intercessor; but instead of going to the shore, he is bound in an igloo and left there by his people. While still in this bound condition he is said to ascend through the roof of the igloo, and to meet and hold communication with *Good-la-pom-c-o*, and having arranged matters with him he returns to earth, re-enters the igloo through the door, and reports the results of this interview.

The following are some of the laws of the Eskimos:

"1. No man shall after sunset do any work requiring the use of tools. The women may sew, make garments, or chew boots. (Thus the hours of each day after sunset form the Eskimo's Sabbath.)

"2. No person shall eat walrus and deer meat on the same day.

"3. The carcasses of all land animals slain during the winter season shall be equally divided among all members of the community.

"4. All kinds of rare game are common property during all seasons.

"5. Any person finding drift-wood secures ownership by placing stones upon it.

"6. Any other kind of goods found remains the property of the original owner.

"7. When a seal is harpooned and gets off with the har-

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

poon, the first harpooner loses all claim to it when the float becomes detached.

"8. If two hunters strike a bird at the same time, it shall be equally divided between them.

"9. Whoever is first to see a bear has first ownership, no matter who slays it.

"10. After slaying a bear, the man who kills it shall hang up his hunting implements, together with the bladder of the beast, in some high, conspicuous place, for at least three days, and for four days shall be separated from his wife.

"11. When a walrus is slain, the successful hunter shall be separated from his wife for at least one day.

"12. The borrower of tools shall not be bound to give compensation for damages.

"13. No person shall '*muckchucto*' (sew) while any member of the family is ill.

"14. If any man for any cause whatsoever slays his neighbor, the wife and family of the deceased shall become the family of the slayer, and shall be taken care of by him as if they were his own."

One Eskimo legend regarding the origin of the people has already been related. Another of special interest, regarding the occurrence of a flood, runs something like this: A very long time ago there was a great rain, which was so terrible that it flooded the earth and destroyed all people, with the exception of a few Eskimos, who constructed a raft by lashing together a number of kyacks and took refuge upon it. Upon this raft they drifted for a long time, until they were much reduced by cold and starvation. Then at length, in their distress, their angokoke stood up and cast his harpoon and all their ornaments into the flood of waters. This act sufficed to appease the angry spirits, and the flood subsided.

This legend is particularly interesting since it adds one to the large number of similar legends belonging to other savage tribes and nations.

## OCCUPATIONS OF THE ESKIMOS

Another romantic Eskimo legend explains the origin of the sun and moon.

As a rule, the aged and feeble members of the Eskimo community are treated with respect and kindness, but during times of distress and famine they are often forgotten in the general struggle for existence. For instance, when the supply of food at any particular place becomes exhausted, and through starvation the people are forced to go elsewhere in search of the necessities of life, the aged or feeble, or those who have become too weak to travel, are left behind to perish. If, however, food is soon found, a portion is at once taken back; and after all, what more could be done, even by white people?

When an Eskimo dies at home in the igloo, his body is never taken away for burial by carrying it out through the doorway, but an opening must be made in the rear for its removal. The place chosen for the burial of the dead is some almost isolated point of land, a hill-top difficult of access, or some remote island where there is the least danger of the bodies being disturbed by wild beasts.

The dead are first wrapped in their skin robes, then laid to rest and covered over with piles of stones.

At times these graves are made very large, while in other cases the bodies are barely covered over. Usually some kind of a memorial is raised over the grave: frequently a long stone, but more often a topick pole or paddle, to the top of which a flag or streamer is fixed to mark the last lonely resting-place of the departed.

Beside the lonely grave are placed the hunting implements of its occupant, and there, upon the dreary waste, imprisoned in his rocky tomb beneath the snows of many a winter storm, the poor Eskimo lies awaiting the sound of the last trumpet.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### DOWN TO THE SEA.

BAKER LAKE, about seventy miles in length and perhaps half that in breadth, was originally discovered and rudely mapped by one Captain Christopher, about the year 1770. In searching for the North-West Passage he sailed into it with two small vessels from Hudson Bay, passing *en route* through Chesterfield Inlet and the two rivers flowing into it from Baker Lake. Having with us a copy of Captain Christopher's map, though of a very sketchy character, it afforded us some information as to our future course.

Since leaving the shores of Black Lake we had traversed to this point a distance of just eight hundred and ten miles, through an entirely unknown country. We had occupied more time in doing so than we had expected, on account of the extraordinary character of the weather; however, on the evening of the 2nd of September we found ourselves at the mouth of "the great river flowing to the northward," as described by the Black Lake Indians.

From our astronomical observations and survey it was found that the extremity of the lake as determined by Christopher, and as located on the existing maps of Canada, was nine miles too far south and about fifty miles too far west. At the mouth of the river the water was found to be shallow—in some places not more than three or four feet in depth—and for some distance out into the lake shoals were observed. Small sailing vessels or York boats would have no difficulty in getting in, but it would be difficult to take the former any great distance up the river on account of the rapids.

## DOWN TO THE SEA

Large, properly constructed river boats might be taken up stream without difficulty for a distance of 150 miles to the confluence of the west branch, and how far they might be able to ascend that large stream it is impossible for me to say.\* With the exception of perhaps one spot—the canyon rapid north of Dubawnt Lake—I believe the whole river from the Height of Land to Baker Lake might be navigated by river or York boats with comparative ease. At the rapid a portage would have to be made.

I think it important to mention the above possibilities of access to this country, on account of the fact that from Dubawnt Lake to Baker Lake there stretches an extended area of promising mineral-bearing Huronian schists and trappean rocks, a series very similar to the silver, copper and gold bearing rocks of the north shore of Lake Superior and Lake of the Woods districts. The time must come—it may not be far distant—when the prospector and the miner will occupy all this vast field of mineral wealth.†

From the head of Baker Lake we were now to commence a new stage of the journey. The rough maps in our possession enabled us to form a fair idea of our prospective route. From our camp to the mouth of Chesterfield Inlet, on the coast of Hudson Bay, measured about 250 miles, and thence down the coast of the bay to Fort Churchill, a Hudson's Bay Company's post and the nearest habitation of white men, measured 500 more; so that 750 miles was the least distance we had to figure on travelling before the close of navigation.

It was now the month of September, and as winter is known to set in very early in the Hudson Bay district, my

\*For full geological and mineralogical details regarding this district, see J. B. Tyrrell's report for 1893, published by the Geological Survey Department of Canada.

†I have discovered through later exploration that this west branch, now named the Thelon River, is free from obstructions for a distance of 224 miles, making in all an unbroken stretch of river navigation of 374 miles.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTIC OF CANADA

brother and I felt that our time must be employed to the very best advantage. The weather had been extremely adverse all summer, but it was now liable to be more so. Within the course of two or three weeks the equinoctial gales might be expected. The tides also would be a new feature of difficulty.

In consideration of these prospects, and in order to stimulate the men to greater exertion, it was thought best to explain our position to them, for up to this time they had little idea as to where they were, whether in the vicinity of the North Pole or within a few days' travel of civilization. The effect produced by thus informing the canoe-men was as desired. They resolved to make longer days and put forth greater exertion.

Before daylight on the morning of the 3rd, camp was aroused by the sound of many voices, and a few minutes later, before we had turned out from our blankets, the door of the tent was pulled half open, and two or three black, burly heads, with grinning faces, were poked in. They were those of some of our friends from the Ekimo village who had come over to pay us an early morning call before we should finally leave their shores. They all held in their hands nicknacks of one kind or another which they were anxious to trade, chiefly for needles, and some would have come in and made themselves at home had we not dismissed them until we were dressed and ready to do business at a little greater distance from our blankets, which we were desirous should be inhabited only by ourselves. Later, a few fishing-lines, spoons and such trifles were purchased.

As soon as possible, the wind happily being fair, our canoes were loaded, and with many "tabowetings" (good-byes) to the natives and a hurrah for Baker Lake, we started out to the eastward along the north shore. But soon the wind grew strong and caused such a high sea to run that we were forced to seek shelter, which we found in the mouth of a small



## DOWN TO THE SEA

river. We had then made fourteen miles. Here we waited, hoping that toward evening the wind might moderate; but on the contrary it grew worse, so on the lee side of a bluff point camp was pitched to afford us shelter from the cold, piercing blast. A high wind continued all night and during the following day, when it was accompanied by snow and sleet. The temperature was so low that the fresh-water ponds were now frozen over. Such a condition of climate, together with a small and rapidly diminishing stock of provisions, made us chafe at the delay; but on the morning of the 5th we were enabled to launch, and during the day made a good run of about forty miles. The shore of the lake consisted chiefly of Laurentian rock, from 150 to 300 feet in height, but at some places broad, low flats and long points of sand and boulders separated the hills from the water.

During the afternoon of the 6th, the northerly of the two rivers discharging the waters of Baker Lake was discovered. The approach to it is well marked on the north bank by a round bluff some two hundred feet in height. At first no current could be observed in the river, which, in reality, is a deep, narrow fiord, but when we had advanced a distance of about two miles a stiff current, almost approaching a rapid, was met; but instead of moving with us, as would naturally be expected, it was flowing to the westward. At first sight it caused some doubts as to whether we were on the right road. The canoe-men were all persuaded that we were ascending some big river and would have turned back at once, but concluding that we had already reached tide water, though sooner than we had expected, we pulled on, and before long witnessed the seemingly strange phenomenon of a river changing its direction of flow.

So smooth and bare were its glaciated shores that we had some difficulty in effecting a landing. One night was spent on this rocky bank, and the day following, being fair and bright, saw us on the waters of Chesterfield Inlet. The mag-

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

netic compasses were now found to work very unsatisfactorily, but for one day the sunlight enabled me to make liberal use of my solar instrument. During the next and several succeeding days the weather was dark and gloomy, and we encountered such tide rips in the inlet that my survey was much interfered with.

On the 10th of September, as we were pulling down the inlet under a strong side wind, through extremely rough water, we were glad to find about noon a sheltered cove on the north side of a large island near the south shore. Here we landed to await an improvement in the weather. While the cooks were preparing our mid-day meal, my brother and I set out for the summit of the island, a mile or more to the south, for the purpose of taking observations. In due time the breezy elevation was reached. While sighting to a prominent point to the southward, there suddenly appeared from behind it what seemed a phantom ship. For a moment I gazed upon it in amazement, but then realizing that the appearance was a real, not an imaginary one, I called my brother's attention to it.

The object, which was several miles distant, was clearly made out to be a two-masted sailboat, and it was heading to the westward. By whom could it be manned? We could not imagine, but there it was, with two square sails set to the wind, and tearing up the inlet. By the aid of our field-glasses we could make out many moving figures on the boat, but as to whether they were whalers, Hudson's Bay Company's traders from Churchill, or who else, we could not conceive. If, however, they were to be more to us than a vision it was necessary to bestir ourselves, for they were rapidly passing. From my pocket I drew an immense red handkerchief and waved it most energetically, while my brother discharged several shots from his revolver. We soon saw from the boat's movements that we were observed, but instead of coming in towards us they only bore away more to

## DOWN TO THE SEA

the southward. Still I vigorously waved the red handkerchief, and finally, much to our delight, the sails flapped loosely in the wind, then in a moment were refilled by the strong breeze and the boat swept in toward us.

The appearance of a sailboat in Chestertfield Inlet, and especially at this late season of the year, puzzled us much, and as it drew nearer we watched it intently. It had the appearance of being a large whale-boat, and was evidently well manned, but by whom we could not tell. Whoever they might be, perhaps they could be hired to take us down the coast of the bay to Churchill, and if so we might be saved weeks of hard travel on a very exposed and dangerous coast. We sincerely hoped that the strange mariners, or at least their boat, might be available for the voyage. When they had approached sufficiently near we could see that there were Eskimos on board, and a moment later their anchor was cast out, and several of them, making a sort of raft out of three kayacks they had in tow, paddled in to the rocky shore where we stood. In vain did we look for the face of a white man. They were all natives, and we gazed at each other in mutual amazement, I broke the silence with the question, "*Kudloonaah petehungetoo?*" (Is there no white man?) "*Petehungetoo*" (There is none), was the reply, so the whole party, which consisted of several families, men, women and children, were Eskimos, and with them in their boat they had their dogs and other necessary hunting and camping equipments. They informed us they were moving up into the interior from the coast to spend the winter, so it was not surprising that nothing we could offer would induce them to consider the question of taking us down to Churchill or of selling their boat to us. We offered what to them would have been fabulous wealth, but to no purpose. There they were with all their belongings on their way to the westward, and westward they were determined to go.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

The Eskimos in turn expressed surprise at finding two solitary white men upon such a lonely, barren island, and not unnaturally asked, "*Nowtimee ibbee kyette?*" (Where do you come from?) I replied, "*Uvagut kyette tellipea washigtooeloo townonee koog-du-ak*" (We come from the west, very far, down a great river). We were then asked if we had seen any more of their people, and replied, "*Uvagut tacko-namee hipunga Innuvit coonetookeloo manee tacko Innuvit amasuit washigtoo tellipea iglooanne attowsha sissell ungayo*" (We have seen no other Eskimos near here, but saw plenty far to the westward beyond the first big lake). They informed us that another large boat-load of their people had gone up from the coast on the previous day, and were surprised that we had not seen them. Though we were not able to purchase or charter the boat from the natives, we obtained much valuable information and a sketch-map of the coast of the bay from the mouth of the inlet down to Fort Churchill. After a brief stay they returned to their boat, and we to the rocky hills, upon the other side of which our party awaited our return. The wind still continued to blow too strongly to admit of travelling by canoe, so we went back again and spent the rest of the day on the hills.

Next morning we were up early. The wind had fallen somewhat and the canoes were soon launched. We managed to travel until after eleven o'clock, when, because of the high wind and rough water, we were again obliged to make for the shore, and in order to do so had to pull through a heavy surf, breaking over the low, sandy beach. During the afternoon at this point observations for longitude were obtained, and close by upon a prominent hill a large cairn of rocks was erected to mark the spot for the benefit of future explorers.

The two following days were marked by rough weather and little progress, but finally we reached the mouth of the great inlet through which for several days we had been paddling.

## DOWN TO THE SEA

For having completed another stage of the journey we were exceedingly glad, but coupled with this fact there was another, viz., that before us was a five-hundred-mile voyage to be made in open canoes down an exposed sea-coast. Here we would be surrounded by entirely new conditions and confronted with new difficulties.



RUINS OF ESKIMO LODGES, CHESTERFIELD INLET.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### *ADVENTURES BY LAND AND SEA.*

STARTING southward down the coast of Hudson Bay on the 13th of September, with the weather beautifully calm, we made a capital run past a rocky coast, skirted by a succession of shoals and reefs, and at night camped upon the shore about twelve miles north of Marble Island, whose snow-white hills of quartzite could be distinctly seen on the horizon.

Marble Island—so called because of the resemblance its rounded, glaciated, rocky hills bear to white marble—is well known as a wintering station for New England whalers. Its geographical position was determined in 1885 and 1886 by Commander Gordon, of the Dominion Government Hudson Bay Expedition, of which the writer was a member, so we were glad to avail ourselves of the opportunity of connecting our survey with so well-fixed a landmark.

We had been informed by the Eskimos that there were no whalers now at the island, and we satisfied ourselves of the truth of their report by the use of our long-range binoculars. Had there been we would have endeavored to arrange with one of them to take us down to Churchill, but in their absence we could only stick to the canoes. Near camp, on the shore, we found part of the skeleton of an immense whale, but unfortunately not the part that is of commercial value. This doubtless had been carried away by the Eskimos or by some whaling crew.

During the following day the weather continued fair, and

## ADVENTURES BY LAND AND SEA

feeling that nature was favoring us, we made good use of our time. As we followed the coast in a south-westerly direction, the outline of Marble Island could be seen against the southern sky; while to the north extended the bold, dark coast-line of rock, unbroken in appearance excepting where here and there lay great banks of snow.

About noon we discovered, on landing, what must very recently have been a large Eskimo encampment. Several komiticks (sleds) and other articles were found. The wreck of a large whale-boat lay on the shore, and several dogs were seen lurking about. This camping-place was the summer home of the Eskimos we had met sailing up Chesterfield Inlet, and from a sanitary point of view was no credit to them, for filth and putrefaction everywhere abounded.

The rocks of this locality were of an interesting character, being dark green hornblendic schists of the Huronian formation.

Following these two days of exceptionally fair weather we enjoyed still another, and were permitted to traverse the mouth of Rankin Inlet, which would have required two or three days to coast had the weather been anything but calm. During these three days we had made a distance of just one hundred miles, which, upon such an exposed coast, we considered good progress.

Though we saw little game, we still had some dried meat left, and at this rate of travel two weeks would take us to Churchill. By carefully rationing ourselves we had meat enough to last for five or six days, and the balance of the time could, if necessary, be spent without provisions.

On the night of the 15th, however, being camped upon a little sand island in the mouth of Corbet's Inlet, our hopes were blighted by the approach of a gale, and all the next day we lay imprisoned upon the sand-bar without any fresh water to drink. Toward evening the wind was accompanied by a chilling rain, which continued all night and the greater part

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

of the next morning. On the following afternoon the wind suddenly fell, and though a heavy sea continued to roll in from the east, the waves ceased to break.

Fearing to lose one hour when it was possible to travel, we launched our canoes upon the heaving bosom of the deep and started across the mouth of the inlet on an eight-mile traverse. As we passed out beyond the shelter of the island we found the seas running fearfully high, but so long as they did not break upon us we had little to fear, and this would not likely occur unless the wind should spring up again; but when we were well out in the middle of the inlet that is just what did happen. The wind began to rise from exactly the opposite quarter, and speedily increased in force, whipping the crests off the waves in such a way as to make things appear anything but reassuring. Our situation was indeed perilous. Every effort was made to guide the canoes so as to brook least danger, but in spite of all we could do the seas dashed in upon us, and it looked as if we would never reach the shore.

My brother and I laid down our paddles, and with tin kettles applied ourselves vigorously to bailing out the water. Many times the great tumbling billows seemed as if they would surely roll over us, but our light cedars, though sometimes half-filled with water, were borne up on the crest of the waves. At length we neared the rocky shore toward which for several hours we had been struggling, but, to our dismay, only to find it skirted by a long line of rocks and shoals, upon which the full fury of the wild sea was breaking. What were we to do? Without a harbor we would be dashed to pieces upon the rocks—and it was impossible to retreat against the storm. On we were borne by the force of the gale, but, thanks to a kind Providence, just as the crisis appeared to have come, a way of escape was discerned. One rock could be seen standing out in advance of the others, and behind this we managed with a supreme effort to guide the canoes. Then in shallow water, with the force of the



## ADVENTURES BY LAND AND SEA

seas broken, we all sprang out, and with great exertion succeeded in landing the boats in safety.

The country here was entirely barren and rocky, comparatively level, and of a most dreary aspect, without a sign of vegetation. The storm continued for two days longer, during which time we were obliged to remain on shore. As our provisions were now about exhausted, attention was chiefly devoted to hunting, but all that could be found was a small duck and two gulls. The broken remains of an Eskimo kayak were found upon the shore, and these were carefully gathered up so that a kettle of water might be boiled and our gulls cooked for supper.

On the morning of the 20th, the wind having fallen, camp was called at four o'clock and without breakfast our journey resumed. Later in the day each man had a small piece of dried meat, quite insufficient to satisfy his appetite; but, hungry though we were, the motto plainly written on every man's face was, "Speed the paddle." Thus we pressed on for two days, making good progress; but having scarcely anything to eat, the work began to tell on us.

On the 22nd we were again storm-bound by a heavy gale, with snow, which lasted four days. During this time we suffered considerably from the violence of the storm as well as from want of food. As soon as it had abated sufficiently, which was not until the morning of the 25th, two of the men, Pierre and Louis, were sent out with the shot-guns to hunt for food, and with our rifles my brother and I set out for an all-day tramp into the interior. We found our camp was situated near the end of a long, narrow point, at the back of which was Neville Bay. The point consisted in places of extended fields of water-washed boulders, and in order to reach the mainland we had to cross these. The necessity of doing this, together with the fact that we were walking with weakened limbs into the teeth of a gale, made travelling extremely difficult.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

Shortly after we left camp, a hare jumped out from among the rocks, and coming within range, was perforated by a slug from my "Marlin." Not wishing to carry it all day, we left it with Pierre and Louis to be taken to camp. By three o'clock, after a long and laborious march, and securing nothing but a solitary ptarmigan, my brother and I reached the foot of the bay, and there discovered the mouth of a large river which flowed into it. We would gladly have stayed some time in this vicinity, but as the day was already far spent, and we were pretty well used up, we dare not. Finding a little dry moss, we made a fire, roasted and ate the ptarmigan, and then started back to camp. In some places the fresh snow was deep and soft, and this added greatly to the fatigue of the tramp. But before we had proceeded far we met with encouragement in the discovery of deer-tracks. They were a day or so old, for they were frozen, but they led away nearly in the direction of camp, so we eagerly followed them, and from every hill-top keenly scanned the country.

The shades of evening were gathering, and we were tired and hungry. Nothing could we see of the deer, and fearing to lie out all night without blankets in the rough, cold weather, we pushed on towards camp as fast as our weary limbs would carry us. We were frequently obliged to sit down and rest, and consequently, while still several miles from camp, we found ourselves enveloped in darkness and groping our way laboriously through a field of boulders. For a considerable distance we had to feel the way with hands and feet between and over the rocks. After about two hours of this sort of experience, we gained the more level country, and shortly afterwards, guided by the light of a candle in one of the tents, we reached camp thoroughly used up. We were not, however, obliged to go to bed hungry, for Pierre and Louis, having been more successful than ourselves, had secured several ptarmigan and rabbits. From these a *bouillon* had

## ADVENTURES BY LAND AND SEA

---

been prepared, and part of it saved for our supper. It was a most thoroughly appreciated meal, and after partaking of it we were soon rolled up in our blankets, all unconscious of the storm that howled without or of the fact that we had not another meal in camp. On the morning of the 26th we were glad to find that the wind had fallen sufficiently to allow us to launch. Without delay the canoes were loaded and a fair run made. Several sea-ducks were shot during the day, and thus supper was secured.

The next day, again storm-bound by a gale from the southwest, the whole party started out to hunt for food. We were not altogether unsuccessful, assembling in the evening with five marmots (little animals about the size of squirrels).

The following morning, though a strong breeze was blowing, we determined to make a start, for to remain where we were meant that we must soon starve to death. We were already much reduced and weakened from the effects of cold and hunger, and the condition of the weather had of late been most disheartening. Churchill, the nearest habitation of man, was still fully three hundred miles distant. We had not one bite of food. The country was covered with snow, the weather piercingly cold. No fuel was to be had, and, worst of all, the weather was such, the greater part of the time, that we were unable to travel. It was difficult to be cheerful under such circumstances, but we kept up courage and pushed on.

While we were bending to our paddles, after making perhaps seven or eight miles south-westerly along the coast, a band of deer was seen upon the shore. Our course was quickly altered and a landing effected, though with some difficulty, as the tide was falling and the water rapidly receding. The men were left to keep the canoes afloat while my brother and I, with our rifles, went in pursuit of the deer, which were at this time much more difficult to hunt than earlier in the season, when they run in great herds.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

The country here was a vast and dreary plain, affording no cover for the hunter save that of a few scattered boulders. Concealed by some of these, we crept for long distances, but finding it impossible to get within any kind of medium range, we opened fire at a distance of four or five hundred yards. At first the deer trotted about in confusion, but soon locating their enemies, they fled straight away across the plains. For several hours we followed, vainly seeking for opportunity of nearer approach, but being unsuccessful, retraced our weary steps to the shore, where we arrived faint and exhausted. We found the men had been unable to keep the canoes afloat because of the ebbing tide. They were now high and dry, and the water of the bay barely visible in the distance—such was the extremely low and flat character of the coast.



EXPLORING RANKIN INLET, HUDSON BAY.

## CHAPTER XV.

### *POLAR BEARS.*

As it was impossible to launch until the return of the tide, Pierre and Louis were given our rifles and sent off to try their fortunes. As they departed, leaving us lying in the shelter of a rock, we sincerely wished them success. We had done our utmost and had failed; if they also should fail it was too apparent what must soon be the result. Two of the other men were sent off with shot-guns. Then anxious hours of waiting followed. No shots were heard, but towards evening Pierre and Louis, and afterwards the other men, could be seen returning in the distance. None of them appeared to be bringing any game, so far as we could see and at the sight, I confess, my heart grew sick. As they came nearer, however, Louis, holding up something in his hand, exclaimed, "I got him!" It was the claw of a polar bear, and we soon learned with joy that, sure enough, he had killed a bear, which he had unexpectedly come upon at the edge of a lake while following the deer.

The encounter had taken place about six miles inland, and Louis was alone at the time, his brother having gone off on a diverging track. The meeting was a mutual surprise, for the bear, which was lying on the snow near the ice, being very white himself, was unobserved until the hunter's approaching footsteps aroused him. There was then a distance of not more than fifty yards between them, and no time for consideration.

The bear, springing to his feet, made straight for Louis, who met his charge with a slug and brought him to his knees.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

He was up in an instant, though, and followed the Indian, who had taken to the ice, thinking that in a conflict he would there have the advantage. But in this he found he was mistaken. The bear was quickly overtaking him, being at home on the ice, so he turned and with a second shot again knocked the animal down.

As Louis made for the shore the bear regained his feet, and with blood streaming from his wounds, and a roar of fury, made one more desperate charge. He was now within a few feet of Louis. The intrepid hunter, realizing his situation as critical, turned quickly and by a well-aimed shot laid his savage pursuer dead at his feet.

It was a most fortunate shot for our whole party, as well as for the Indian, who, being unable to handle the carcass himself, had returned for assistance, meeting his brother by the way. We all gladly followed him to the scene of the combat, where, judging from the tracks and blood, there was abundant proof of the veracity of his story.

On a hill near the carcass some dry moss was discovered, and with this, even before the skinning had been completed, some of the flesh was toasted and greedily devoured. The reviving effect produced upon the spirits of our party was marked. Though the flesh of the polar bear is famed for its rankness, we would not have exchanged it at that time for its weight in silver.

The carcass was found to be extremely poor, the only food found in the stomach being the droppings of reindeer. At the first meeting, therefore, Louis must have been considered a very desirable prize. It was merely a question of which should eat up the other in order to prolong existence. Fortunately for our party the Indian proved to be the fittest survivor. No part of the carcass was wasted, but every scrap, amounting to between three and four hundred pounds, including the hide, was placed in bags, and carried to the canoes, which we reached with much difficulty long after dark.

## POLAR BEARS

Next morning a strong east wind, driving a wild surf in upon the shore, made it impossible to launch, but we were thankful during the delay to have a supply of meat on hand with which to satisfy the cravings of hunger. Advantage was also taken of the opportunity afforded for obtaining moss. Though five or six miles distant, a quantity of this fuel was gathered, and several large kettles of meat boiled—almost sufficient, it was hoped, to take us to Churchill. But alas for our hopes! The gale which had arisen increased in fury until it became a terrific storm, accompanied by sleet and snow, and this continued for five long days.

One night the tent occupied by my brother and I was ripped up the back by the force of the gale, and with difficulty kept from being carried away. So piercingly cold was the wind that without shelter we must soon have perished. We were already numb with cold, but in the midst of snow and darkness I managed to find in my bag a sail needle and some twine, and then having lowered the tent to the ground, while my brother held it, I stitched up the rent. When the tent was again raised, our bedding was buried in snow, but the blankets being our only comfort, the drifts were shaken off, and in a half-perished condition we again crept beneath them.

Besides the discomforts occasioned by the storm at this camp, I suffered a serious experience of poisoning. Our cook, thinking to give my brother and myself a treat, provided for our dinner a dish of fried liver. Perhaps because of its rank flavor, my brother partook sparingly and so partially escaped, but I ate of it freely and at once became fearfully ill. For a whole day I lay in the tent, retching and straining, though throwing off nothing but froth, until I thought I should have died. My brother urged me to take some brandy, a little of which still remained in a flask we had brought with us, but for some time I declined. Towards evening, however, finding that I would have to take something or give up the ghost, I yielded to his advice, and soon began to recover. I have

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

since learned that polar bear's liver is considered to be poisonous, both by the Eskimos and by the north-sea whalers.

### PREVIOUS BEAR HUNT.

While on the subject of bears, it may be of interest to relate here a rather exciting personal experience I once had, which took place several years before, on the barren, ice-bound shores of Hudson Straits.

We were a small detachment of explorers, travelling at the time in the little steam launch of a scientific expedition, and occupied in the geographical determination of a group of hitherto unknown islands. The *personnel* of our party, without giving full names, was as follows: The Doctor, who occupied a position in the stern of the boat and acted as steersman; Mac., who, contrary to orders, had smuggled a small rifle on board and come with us for sport; Con., an able seaman from Newfoundland, and myself.

The reason for orders having been given by our commander to take no rifles with us was, doubtless, that we might not allow sport to interfere with the object of our commission. Besides Mac.'s single-shot rifle, I had in my belt a 38-calibre S. & W. revolver, and these two, with a knife and an axe, constituted our defence; but no special thought was given to these things as at six o'clock on that summer morning, in the shadow of the Arctic, our little expedition steamed away on its mission, following and mapping the various points and bays of the rocky shore, and giving all attention to our work as we ploughed through the cold, blue waters.

Before we had proceeded many miles it became necessary to go ashore in order to obtain fresh water for the boiler of the launch. Accordingly, observing what appeared to be a little cascade falling over broken cliffs into the sea, our course was shaped towards it; but before we could gain the shore our purpose was for the time forgotten, because of the sudden appearance, only a few yards ahead, of two polar bears—a large one and her cub—swimming in the water.



## POLAR BEARS

Mac, and I quickly took up position in the bow and opened hostilities, but on account of the roughness of the sea and the tossing of the boat, the shots were ineffective, and so far as the old bear was concerned, an opportunity was not afforded for repeating them. Quick as a flash she disappeared, leaving her fleecy cub paddling about on the surface.

Though the engine of our boat had been stopped, the momentum carried us on rapidly past the little swimmer, which was about the size of a half-grown sheep. As we passed, Con. seized master bruin and endeavored to land him on board, but in this he, perhaps fortunately, failed, and was prevented from pursuing his ambition by the sudden appearance from the deep of the enraged mother, who, with a roar, made a plunge for the stern of the boat, where the Doctor was seated, and seized the gunwale in what were afterwards described as her "devilish-looking jaws."

To say that this sudden turn of events was a surprise to us all but feebly describes the expressions depicted upon the faces of our party. With the other occupants and the engines between us and the bear, Mac, and I were unable to shoot, but Con. came to the rescue, and with several desperate thrusts of the iron-pointed gaff he persuaded the bear to release her hold, when with the engine again running, a separation was effected, but not before we had learned an interesting lesson regarding the habits of the polar bear.

As a matter of discretion, the boat was now kept at a safe distance from the bears. Several shots were fired, one or two slight wounds being inflicted on the mother, but as fast as the little one could travel, though no faster, they maintained a steady course for the nearest point of land. Apparently nothing would induce the mother bear to forsake her little one, and though wounded herself, her whole anxiety seemed to be for her offspring. Sometimes she would swim a short distance in advance, but only to return in a moment, as if to urge on the little creature to greater exertion.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

The shore was soon gained by the swimmers, who then beat a rapid retreat up the rocky cliffs and disappeared among the distant hills. As they fled, the exhibition of motherly affection shown by the old bear was very remarkable and pleasing. She would never allow the cub to be separated more than a few feet from her, and would govern her own pace to suit that of her "bairn."

As the bears made good their escape, self-reproach and disappointment mingled in our souls, and more than one emphasized denunciation was heaped upon our commander's head because we had been prevented from having our rifles with us.

After a few moments of bitter reflection as to what "might have been," our thoughts reverted to surveying and the obtaining of fresh water, but before thought could be followed by action, strange to say, two other large bears were sighted ahead. They were near the shore, and not very far from the foot of the falls for which we had been steering.

A brief consultation was held, and it was decided to advance cautiously upon them. Mac., with his rifle and but a half-dozen remaining cartridges, again took his position in the bow of the boat; but, prompted by recent experience, I remained at the stern with my revolver, while Con. stood amidships armed with the gaff. The bears, observing us, landed upon a high point of broken cliffs close by, and as they did so, Mac. gave them a couple of slugs, which evidently took effect, but caused them no particular inconvenience. A moment later they were lost to sight among the rocks. Resolved upon preventing their escape if we possibly could, Mac. and Con.—the latter armed with the axe—were allowed to go ashore and head off the retreat, while we in the boat skirted along the shore where the bears might be most likely to take to the water. Our landing party had no sooner reached the summit of the first ridge of rock than "bang!" went Mac.'s rifle, and a moment later, as he crammed in another cartridge, there appeared over the ridge, not more





AN ENCOUNTER WITH POLAR BEARS.

## POLAR BEARS

than five yards from his feet, the blood-bespattered heads of the two furies.

It was a critical moment for our two sportsmen, and one of breathless suspense for those of us who looked on. Con. stood with uplifted axe ready to strike as Mac., again leveling, fired into the face of the foremost bear, now almost at his feet, and sent a slug boring through his head. By ordinary bears this would have been received as sufficient intimation to drop dead, but it seemed only to "rattle" this polar, so that, instead of proceeding to demolish Mac. and Con., he plunged over the steep cliff into the sea and there terminated his career.

The other bear, seeing the fate of his comrade, retreated and took to the water, and as he did so, leaving a trail of blood upon the rocks, Mac. sent his last slug after him. He and Con. then, descending to the shore, came on board, and with us gave chase to the wounded animal, who was swimming off at a rapid pace. Our launch, however, soon overtook him, and as we passed I gave him a volley from my revolver, which appeared to have little more effect than to increase his rage.

As I was about to fire again he disappeared, and a moment later reappeared at the side of the boat, threw one paw over the gunwale, and with open, blood-thirsty jaws made a lunge for my leg. Fortunately for me his reach was a little too short, and the result was he got the worst of the scuffle. Putting my revolver up to the side of his head, I gave him the contents of the five chambers before he could retire. These shots, however, did not penetrate the skull, and beyond causing a withdrawal, only had the effect of further enraging him.

Hostilities having been commenced at close quarters, we continued the fight until I had fired my last cartridge and bruin's scalp was riddled with lead. But the wounded fury still swam powerfully, and with ammunition now exhausted it appeared as if we would not be able to complete the task

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

we had undertaken. For a short time we watched his movements, and observing that he seemed inclined to go ashore, we decided upon a new plan of action. Steaming away around the point, we beached the boat, and, armed with axe, ice-gaff and knife, we climbed the farther side of the cliff, and there concealed ourselves in such a position that we were able to watch the enemy's movements.

We had not long to wait, for, thinking himself unobserved, he swam ashore at the foot of the bluff and hid among the broken rocks. Feeling that our opportunity had now arrived, we descended stealthily from ledge to ledge and from rock to rock, taking care that we should not be scented or observed. Step by step we drew nearer, until close to the foot of the cliff, and almost at our feet, we came upon the wounded bear. He was much out of humor, and sore enough from his many wounds, but before he had time to demonstrate his displeasure, Mac. had thrust the gaff through his skull, Con. had cleft his head with the axe, and my knife had spilled his heart's blood upon the rocks.

In the animal world the polar bear is admittedly the monarch of the north. He is the bear of bears, being described by all Arctic travellers as possessing enormous strength and great voracity. Of the score of polars whose more or less intimate acquaintance I have had occasion to make, I have seen at least two whose tracks in the snow measured fifteen by eighteen inches, whose length measured over nine feet, and whose slain carcasses tipped the steelyard at from fifteen to sixteen hundred pounds.

Consequently I have always had great respect for the sentiments expressed in the following lines by an author whose name I regret being unable to recall:

"Of the black bear you need not be afraid,  
But killing white ones is a dangerous trade.  
In this be cool, and well direct your lead,  
And take your aim at either heart or head;  
For struck elsewhere, your piece not level'd true,  
Not long you'll live your erring hand to rue."

## CHAPTER XVI.

### *LIFE OR DEATH?*

AFTER the great five days' storm, which lasted until the 4th of October, the whole country was buried in snow, and every possibility of finding even a little moss for fuel was excluded. Winter indeed had overtaken us. Ice was forming all along the shore of the bay, and it was evident that within a very few days travel by canoe must be at an end.

On the above date, though light snow continued to fall, the wind had gone down sufficiently to admit of launching the canoes after a long portage out to meet the tide. In spite of the most vigorous exertion, all we were able to make during the day was ten miles, and that through a chilling spray which froze upon us and encased canoes and men in an armor of ice. We had great difficulty in getting ashore at night, having again to portage a long distance over the low-tide boulder flats.

On the following morning the waters of the bay were out of sight, and it was not until about noon, when the tide flowed in, that we were able to float the canoes. Even then we were so obstructed by the new ice and a strong head-wind, that we were not able to make more than a mile or two before being again forced to struggle to the shore. At this rate we would be a long time in reaching Churchill. We had now been more than three weeks on the coast, and were still at least two hundred and fifty miles from our haven.

Some different mode of travel must be adopted or we should never get in. The shore ice was forming rapidly and might now block us at any time. We had not more than

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTIC OF CANADA

enough bear meat for another day or two, and the game had all left the country. What was to be done? My brother and I talked the matter over during the night. The plan suggested itself of abandoning everything but rifles and blankets, and starting down the shore on foot. But then, how could the numerous large rivers, which were still open, be crossed? Again, to this plan there was the objection that having been in canoes all summer, our party, though still strong enough to paddle, was in very poor condition to walk. The only other feasible plan was then suggested. It was to abandon gunnage, instruments, rock collection, etc., everything except note-books, photographs, plant collection, rifles, blankets, and two small tents, and with these to start out in only two light canoes, and with the increased force in them to travel for our lives.

This plan was decided on, and in the morning the men were set to work to cache all our stuff excepting the articles above mentioned. This occupied the whole morning, and to us it was a sad and lonely task; but as it seemed to be the only way by which we might hope to escape from this dreary ice-bound coast, it was felt to be a necessary one. As secure a cache as we could build was made, and then with heavy hearts we turned our steps toward the shore.

After launching the two canoes it was with great danger and difficulty we were able to force a way through the broken but heavy shore-ice to the open water beyond. Having once gotten clear, we were able to make good progress, and even at great risk of being smashed upon some of the many rocks, we paddled far into the night; but at a late hour, being sheathed in ice from the freezing spray, we landed, and, without supper, lay down to sleep upon the snow.

Eight more dreary days passed, six of which were spent in battling with the elements and two in lying storm-bound in our tents. During this interval our party suffered much from cold and lack of food, and to make matters worse, dysen-



## LIFE OR DEATH?

tery attacked us, and it appeared as if one of our men would die.

The ice had been all the while forming, rendering it more and more difficult to launch or get ashore. Our frail canoes were badly battered, and often were broken through by the ice; and the low character of the coast had not improved. Still with hollow cheeks and enfeebled strength we struggled on, sometimes making fair progress and at others very little, until on October the 14th, as we advanced, the ice became so heavy, and extended so far out to sea, that in order to clear it we had to go quite out of sight of land.

Towards evening we began to look about for some opportunity of going ashore, but nothing could be seen before us but a vast field of ice, with occasional protruding boulders. We pushed on, hoping to find some bluff, point or channel of water by which we might reach the shore, but the appearance of things did not change in the slightest. We stood up in the canoes or climbed upon boulders, vainly hoping to at least get a glimpse of the land. Of course, we knew the direction in which the shore lay, but it was so low, and we were so far out, that it was beyond our view.

Soon the shades of night began to fall about us, our canoes were leaking badly, and the weather was bitterly cold. Failing to reach the shore, we resolved to wait for high tide, about ten o'clock, hoping we might with it do better. The tide came, but left us still in the same condition, no more able to penetrate the ice or gain the shore than before. It had become intensely dark, and we were in great danger of being smashed on the ice or rocks. We were utterly helpless and could do nothing but remain where we were, or go where the tide chose to carry us, until the return of daylight.

The hours of that night were the longest I have ever experienced, and the odds seemed to be against our surviving until morning; but at last the day returned and found us still alive. My brother was nearly frozen, having been

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

obliged to sit or lie in icy water all night. Poor little Michel had both of his feet frozen, and the rest of us were badly used up. Still we were in the same position as on the night before. We could not hold out much longer; we must gain the shore or perish. At the time of high tide, the ice being somewhat loosened, our canoes were thrust into the pack, and by great exertion, as well as much care, we succeeded about one o'clock in reaching solid ice, upon which we were able to land, and, for the last time, haul out our noble little crafts. We had been in them just thirty hours, battling with the ice, exposed to a chilling winter blast, our clothing saturated and frozen, and our bodies faint and numb with starvation and cold. But we were now within reach of the land, and all of us who were able gladly scrambled out upon the ice to stretch our cramped and stiffened limbs. My brother was in a perishing condition from the exposure of the night. He had been barely able to keep his canoe afloat by bailing, and had sat in the icy water for seventeen hours. I wrapped him up as warmly as I could and administered half a bottle of Jamaica ginger, the last of our stock. We then set about hauling the canoes over the ice to the shore, which we soon reached, and where we were so fortunate as to find drift-wood. A fire was quickly made, camp pitched, and better still, a meal prepared. On the previous day a seal, the only one secured on the trip, had been shot, and we were now in a position to appreciate it. The three western half-breeds were still fairly strong, but the remaining five of us were very weak and badly used up. We knew now, however, that we could be no great distance from Churchill, for we had again reached the wooded country, and two or three miles back from the shore could be seen dark clumps of spruce trees. This was a most consoling fact, for besides having meat for several days, we felt that we would have shelter and fire.

As for launching our canoes again, that was entirely out

## LIFE OR DEATH?

of the question. If we would reach Churchill at all it must be by land.

As most of us were unable to walk, the only course open appeared to be to send on some of the stronger men to, if possible, reach the Fort and bring back a relief party. This plan was proposed, and two of the western men, Jim and John, volunteered to undertake the walk. We thought the distance could not be more than fifty miles, and it might be considerably less. On the morning of the 16th the two men set out on their journey, while those of us remaining proceeded to move our tents back from the shore about two miles, to the nearest woods, where we might make ourselves more comfortable, to await the success or failure of the relief party.

A sheltered spot was selected for camp, in a thick grove of spruce trees, and after clearing away about two feet of snow which covered the ground, tents were pitched, then well carpeted with spruce boughs, and a big camp-fire made. This was indeed a happy change from lying in canoes in the ice-pack. Clothing and blankets were now dried, and with the seal meat, and some ptarmigan which we shot in the grove, we were soon comparatively comfortable—with the exception, perhaps, of poor Michel, who suffered much from his frozen feet.

The reviving effect of the camp-fire upon our numb and half-frozen bodies was soon felt, though with the exception of Francois, the western half-breed, all of us at the camp were still very weak. Our veteran Pierre, who had done such good service with the paddle, now staggered in his walk, and as we were moving the tents from the shore back to the woods, he fell from sheer exhaustion and had difficulty in regaining his feet. Now in camp, however, and with meat enough to last us for a day or two, we were in a position to take a rest from our labors. Poor Michel's feet were in a bad state, and having no proper means of treating them, we were anxious about them. His brother Louis was also in a

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

wretched condition from the effects of severe dysentery, caused by exposure and starvation, and was unable to walk.

On the morning of the 17th, feeling somewhat revived after a long night's rest, I undertook to go hunting ptarmigan, which we were glad to find were plentiful in the woods about us. Had it not been for the fact that our ammunition was almost exhausted, the occurrence of these birds in abundance would have afforded us greater consolation; but being, as we were, reduced to a dozen or two cartridges, the opportunity for living on feathered game seemed limited to a short period. Before I had walked a hundred yards from camp, I was forced to realize how weak I had become, and after making a circuit of about half a mile and shooting only two or three birds, I was scarcely able to crawl back to the tent. On my return, François, taking the shot-gun, went out and returned in the evening with a fine bag of game.

On waking the next morning, my brother amused us by relating an extraordinary dream, in which he imagined he was luxuriating in good things, and particularly sweet currant cakes, for which he was exhibiting a wonderful capacity. But alas! with the visions of the night the cakes had vanished, and for breakfast he was forced to be content with unseasoned boiled ptarmigan.

At about one o'clock in the day, as we were seated within the tent partaking of our second meal, we were suddenly startled by hearing the exclamation, "Hullo, Jim!" The eagerness with which we scrambled over dinner and dishes to the tent-door can better be imagined than described, and on looking out, sure enough there was Jim returning. Was he alone? No, thank the Lord! Behind him, a moment later, emerged from the woods a number of men, followed by teams of dogs and sleds. One after the other there came scampering along no less than four teams, hauling long, empty sleds capable of furnishing accommodation for our whole outfit.

After a hard two days' tramp, Jim and John had reached



THE LAST MEAL. A GLOOMY OUTLOOK.



## LIFE OR DEATH?

the Fort, where they found kind friends ready to send us prompt assistance. Dog teams had been placed at their disposal, provisions supplied, and early on the morning of the same day on which they had found us, the train had set out for our relief. With light sleds they had travelled at a rapid pace over the thirty miles of snowy plains which separated us from Churchill. Another day of good travel in the canoes would have taken us in, had this been afforded us.

As the relief party drew up at our camp, Jim advanced and handed letters to my brother and myself, expressing kind wishes and sympathy from Mr. and Mrs. Lofthouse, the Church of England missionary and his wife at the Fort, whose friendship I had the privilege of making on two former visits to Churchill. Along with the letters was handed a box, which when opened was found to contain the good things of my brother's dream, even to the sweet currant cakes. Staple provisions were also produced, and it is scarcely necessary to say that they were joyfully welcomed. It would be impossible to describe our feelings upon this occasion, the termination of so many hardships and sufferings. During the afternoon preparations were made for the journey to the Fort on the following day. The canoes were hauled up from the shore, where we had been obliged to leave them, and loaded upon two of the dog-sleds. Camp outfit and provisions were loaded upon the others, and as far as possible everything was put in readiness for an early start in the morning.

A change in the weather was already forecast, the wind shifting around to the south, and towards evening it became decidedly milder. During the night a rain set in, and between it and the warm wind a wonderful change was wrought before dawn. It began to look very much as if the fates were against us, and that now with the sleds and dog-teams we should have no snow to travel on. But before daylight camp was astir, and finding that enough yet remained, break-

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

fast was partaken of by the light of the camp-fire and at the first streaks of dawn the journey on sleds to Churchill was begun.

Out of the woods there was comparatively little of the snow left. Under cover of the trees it was still deep, but too soft and heavy for the teams, so we kept along on the open plains between the woods and the shore, and made fair progress.

The arrangement of our party was as follows: As guide, an Indian named James Westasecot led the way some distance ahead of the train. Next after him came a team of six big Eskimo dogs, hitched two and two abreast to a long sled carrying the big canoe, in which Michel was given a passage. Following this team was another hauling the smaller canoe, in which I was rolled up in my blankets. The third team consisted of only four dogs and, in a carryall, hauled my brother and some of the baggage; and at the rear of the train trotted another full team of six dogs with Louis, the sick Iroquois, and the camp outfit. The rest of our men walked behind or beside the various sleds, resting themselves by jumping on when the travelling was easy, as it often was when crossing level spaces or frozen ponds, of which latter there were very many.

The day was beautifully bright and pleasant for one travelling as I was, but for the drivers and dogs it was much too warm for comfort. In many places the higher ground was bare, and progress consequently slow.

About noon a halt was made for lunch, and during this time the opinion was expressed by the drivers that we would not be able to reach the Fort until the next day; but upon being promised that if they would take us in without having to spend another night in camp they should have whatever remained of the supplies they had brought us, they were induced to change their minds, and acting upon the new inspiration we were soon again on our way. In many places



## LIFE OR DEATH?

the low, flat plains we traversed were overgrown by clumps of swamp willow, and around these many large flocks of ptarmigan were seen. About three o'clock in the afternoon we reached Grassy Field, at the foot of Button's Bay, and two hours later gained the base of a long range of rocky hills. We skirted the foot of these for some time, until we reached a low place in the ridge, where, dismounting to lighten the loads, we turned up the steep pass, and after a short climb to the crest found ourselves within full view of Fort Churchill. It was not an imposing place, but even though consisting of only four or five old frame buildings, the sight to us was one of deep satisfaction. For a moment we paused on the summit of the ridge, then at the crack of the driver's whip the teams bounded forward, galloped down the steep slope, sped across the plains below, and in a few minutes landed us at the house of the Hudson's Bay Company's trader. Here, after extricating ourselves from the various conveyances, we were presently received by a tall young Scotchman, who announced himself as Mr. Matheson, Master of the Fort.



CAMP SCENE ON WEST SHORE, HUDSON BAY.

## CHAPTER XVII.

### *FORT CHURCHILL.*

WITH our arrival at Fort Churchill we felt that the successful termination of our long journey was pretty well assured. Here there must be an abundance of provisions to feed our small party for an indefinite length of time, so that we could either spend the winter at the post and go south by canoes in the spring, or else remain long enough to recruit our energies and continue the journey on snowshoes.

Adjoining the Master's house, and ranged in two irregular, detached rows, near the rocky bank of the Churchill River, were the four or five old frame buildings of the Fort used as storehouses and servants' lodges. Two or three hundred yards down the shore was a neat little church and mission house. Drawn up on the beach near the church were several large, open coast-boats, used during the summer by the Hudson's Bay Company in carrying on trade with the Eskimos, and besides these was a small landing and warehouse; while down at the mouth of the river, five miles distant, could be seen the ruins of old Fort Prince of Wales, once a massive cut-stone fortification.

The buildings of the traders were very old, some of them being in a half-wrecked condition, but those of the mission were new and trim, having been only recently erected by the Rev. Joseph Lofthouse (now Bishop of Keewatin), who with his family occupied the dwelling. In this ideal little home, from the hour of our arrival at the Fort, we were given a most hearty and hospitable welcome.

One of the first duties requiring attention, after arrang-



H. B. CO.'S POST, FORT CHURCHILL.



COAST BOATS AND CHURCH, FORT CHURCHILL.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

ing for rations and shelter, was the treatment of poor Michel's frozen feet, which upon examination were found to be in a shocking condition. Fortunately, in a pocket medicine-case the proper remedies for treating him were found, and with attention and care his condition from the first began to improve, though it was evident that at best it would be many weeks, if not months, before he would again be able to walk.

Our situation and prospects of advancement were thoroughly discussed with the trader, as well as at the mission, and it was resolved that we should proceed southward on foot as soon as the condition of the party (and that of the Churchill River, now running full of ice) would admit. We, therefore, lost no time in getting into training for the tramp, which would cover nearly one thousand miles. Daily walks were prescribed for all but Michel, and the stronger of the men were sent out to shoot ptarmigan, so that they might not only exercise their limbs, but, at the same time, supplement their daily rations, in which endeavors they were quite successful.

As regards my brother and myself, our short constitutions almost invariably ended at the Mission House, where many pleasant hours were spent with Mr. and Mrs. Loft-house and their little daughter Marjorie.

From the time of the establishment of the Churchill Mission—the history of which would of itself form an interesting chapter—to the time of our visit, Mr. and Mrs. Loft-house had been devoting their lives to the noble work of teaching and helping the natives, both Indians and Eskimos, wherever they found them, and already the fruits of their labors were apparent.

Close to their home stood a neat substantial church, capable of seating three hundred people, and every nail in the structure, which would be a credit to many a village in Ontario, was driven by the missionary's own hand. Part

## FORT CHURCHILL

of the year, during the absence of the moving population of the district, such a seating capacity is unnecessarily great; but at other seasons, when the natives come in with the produce of the hunt, the little building is usually crowded.

Mr. Lofthouse preached in the Cree, Chipewyan and Eskimo languages, and having won the esteem and affection of his people, he had a powerful influence over them, and



REV. JOSEPH LOFTHOUSE AND FAMILY.

*Fort Churchill, Hudson Bay.*

taught them with much success. He and Mrs. Lofthouse together conducted a day-school for the benefit of the children of the permanent residents. These numbered twenty-one, the total population of Churchill being only fifty-one. On visiting the school I was much pleased with the advancement of the children, even the smallest of whom

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

could read from the Bible. The girls were taught by Mrs. Lofthouse to do various kinds of needlework, and by way of encouragement were supplied with materials.

At the trading station, besides Mr. Matheson, Captain Hawes and his family were staying at the time, he in an unofficial capacity. He was shortly to succeed Mr. Matheson, who was to be removed to some other post. Although not so well acquainted with the Captain as with Mr. and Mrs. Lofthouse, his face was also a familiar one to me, as we had met at Churchill in former years, when he was master of the Hudson's Bay Company's ship, *Cam Owen*, since wrecked on the coast.

During the stay at Churchill every day brought noticeable improvement in the condition of our party. On several occasions, the weather being favorable, snowshoeing expeditions were formed. These were much enjoyed, though usually accompanied by great fatigue. Knowing, however, that by means of such travel we must return home in a short time, we realized the necessity of gaining strength for the long journey.

In the course of one of our outings we reached a place called Sloops Cove, about half way to Prince of Wales Fort, and there made some interesting observations. This cove owes its name to the fact that in the year 1741 the two sloops, *Furnace* and *Discovery*, sent out from England in command of Captain Middleton to search for the long-looked-for North-West Passage, spent the winter there. How two vessels could have been forced into this cove is a question which has given rise to much speculation on the part of Canadian scientists, for the cove does not now contain more than sufficient depth of water, at high tide, to float a small boat, and it is doubtful if even such a boat could get in through the rocky entrance. The historical fact remains, however, that this cove was the winter quarters of these two sloops, and as proof of the fact a number of ring-bolts to which the

## FORT CHURCHILL

vessels were secured may still be seen leaded into the smooth glaciated granite. Besides the ring-bolts, many interesting carvings are to be seen cut on the surface of the smooth rocks. Amongst these are the following: "*Furnace and Discovery*, 1741," "J. Horner, 1746," "J. Morley, 1748," "James Walker, May ye 25, 1753," "Guilford Long, May ye 27, 1750," "J. Wood, 1757," "Sl. Hearne, July ye 1, 1767." In addition to many other names are several picture carvings, and notably one of a man suspended from a gallows, over



FACSIMILE OF DRAWING ON ROCK AT SLOOP'S COVE.

which is the inscription, "John Kelley from the Isle of Wight." According to local tradition Mr. Kelley was hanged for the theft of a salt goose.

As yet during our stay at Churchill we had not been successful in reaching the ruins of old Fort Prince of Wales, but on the 3rd of November, the weather being cold and good for snowshoeing, we started off, and after an enjoyable five-mile tramp reached the memorable spot, now a scene of utter desolation. Not a tree or other sign of life could be seen on the long, low, snow-driven point of rock, but there in

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

all its solitary, massive grandeur stood the remains of what had more than one hundred years ago been a noble fortress.

The construction of this fortification, which appears to have been planned by the English engineer, Joseph Robson, was commenced in the year 1743 by the Hudson's Bay Company, which was then, as now, carrying on fur-trading business in northern Canada. So large and expensive a fortification was built, probably, not so much for the protection of the Company's interests as for the purpose of complying with a provision of its Royal Charter, which required that the country should be fortified.

The building of the fort appears to have been carried on for many years under the direction of the famous Samuel Hearne, already referred to as having traversed the Barren Lands to the mouth of the Coppermine River. In a stone barrack within the fort, Hearne lived and carried on business for many years.

The fortress was in the form of a square, with sides three hundred and sixteen feet long; at the corners were bastions, and on top of the massive stone walls, twenty feet in height by thirty feet in thickness at the base, were mounted forty-two guns. With such a defence one would suppose that Churchill should have been safe from attacking foes, but this does not seem to have been the case, for history informs us that on the 8th of August, 1782, the gallant La Perouse and his three vessels of war, with, it is said, naught but scurvy-smitten crews, made their appearance before the much-amazed garrison of thirty-nine men, and demanded an unconditional surrender, which was granted without resistance, and the gates of the great stone fort thrown open to the invaders. Taking possession, they spiked and dismounted the guns, in places broke down the walls, burned the barracks, and sailed away to France with Hearne, his men, and all their valuable furs.

As La Perouse left the fort so did we find it. For the





RUINS OF FORT PRINCE OF WALES

( Exterior view )



RUINS OF FORT PRINCE OF WALES  
(Interior view)

## FORT CHURCHILL

most part the walls were still solid, though from between their great blocks of granite the mortar was crumbling. The guns, spiked and dismounted, were still to be seen lying about on the ramparts and among the fallen masonry. In the bastions, all of which were still standing, were to be seen the remains of wells and magazines, and in the centre of the fort stood the walls of the old building in which Hearne and his men had lived. The charred ends of roof-beams were still attached to its walls, where, undecayed, they had rested for the past one hundred and eleven years.

With a continuous low temperature, such as now existed at Churchill, the ice in the river, much to our satisfaction, began to set fast. This was necessary to enable us to continue the journey. On Saturday, November 4th, the thermometer registered  $14\frac{1}{2}$  deg. below zero (Fahr.), and with that temperature the movement of floating ice ceased and the river was bridged from shore to shore. Being anxious to get away as early as possible, arrangements were made with the Company's agent for a start for York Factory on Monday morning. The assistance of one dog-team, with driver and guide, was with some difficulty secured, but three other teams were to accompany us a great part of the way, viz., to Stony River, where in the month of September the Company's servants had been obliged to abandon a boatload of supplies because of severe weather, the month in which we had been canoeing on the coast 500 miles farther north.

A bill of necessary supplies was prepared, and these were weighed out and put into sacks. Men and teams were sent off to obtain a supply of dog-meat—an indispensable commodity—from a shanty on the south side of the river. When they reached the place they found it in possession of five polar bears—three large ones and two cubs. Along with the dog-meat were brought back the skins of one old bear and the two cubs. During Sunday the thermometer fell to 21 deg. below zero, making the river-ice strong and perfectly safe.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### *ON SNOWSHOES AND DOG-SLEDS.*

ON the morning of the 6th of November, after a stay of seventeen days at Fort Churchill, we were again ready to set out for the south. Our team consisted of six Eskimo dogs attached tandem fashion to a sled twelve feet long and a foot and a half wide. This sled was of the regular Eskimo type, the runners being formed of sticks hewn down to the dimensions of about two inches by six inches, and slightly curved up in front.

Upon the sled was loaded about six hundred pounds of provisions, dog-meat, blankets and other dunnage, all securely lashed on within a canvas wrapper. The driver who had charge of the team was a tall young half-breed, named Arthur Omen. Our guide, whose name was Jimmie West-asecot, was a large fine-looking Cree Indian, of about middle age, who bore the distinction of being the most famous hunter and traveller in all that country.

The party consisted of ten. My brother and I were warmly dressed in deerskin garbs of the Eskimo, while the rest of the party wore the white blanket suits of the traders, and with the exception of poor Michel, whose feet were still too sore to allow him to walk, each man was provided with a pair of snowshoes. As one dog-team was unable to draw all the freight, the men were obliged to haul their own dunnage, and for this purpose three flat sleds or toboggans were procured, and loaded with sixty or seventy pounds each.

Thus provision was made for the transport of all necessary supplies, but what was to be done with Michel? Mr.



J. B. TYRRELL.

*(In the identical Eskimo suit worn by him on the tramp from Fort  
Churchill to Winnipeg.)*



## ON SNOWSHOES AND DOG-SLEDS

Matheson kindly assisted us out of the difficulty by offering to take the crippled Indian on one of his sleds. Thus arrangements were completed, and, with nine days' provisions, we bade our kind friends farewell, and, early on the morning of the date mentioned, marched from the fort in single file, forming into a long serpentine train, winding our way to the southward across the broad frozen river. As we departed, farewell salutes were waved from the doorway of the little mission-house, and we felt that with them were wafted the most sincere and hearty good wishes.

At the outset, though we had greatly improved physically during the stay at Churchill, we were still far from being strong, and it was thought best for a time not to attempt forced marches. The wisdom of this was clearly proven before the first day's tramp was ended. That afternoon one of my knees gave out, and soon became so badly crippled that every step caused me the most excruciating pain, and it was with the greatest effort I managed to hobble along after the train until evening. We travelled about twenty-one miles during the day, on an easterly course, across open plains and snow-covered lakes. There was little timber on the route until we reached the Eastern Woods, where it was decided to camp. Upon the open plains we found the snow hard and in good condition for travelling, so that the teams trotted along easily with their heavy loads.

Snowshoe travel was also comparatively easy for those whose legs were sound, but the moment we entered the woods down sank shoes and dogs into the soft, light snow. In soft snow it is necessary for the guide or track-breaker to wear very large shoes, that he may not sink too deeply, but those who follow in his trail get along with the more ordinary size.

The snowshoes used by Jimmie, the guide, were about five feet long and eighteen inches wide, whereas those used by the rest of us varied from three to three and a half feet in length and from ten to twelve inches in breadth. The guide's large

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

shoes were made somewhat after the Montreal model, symmetrical on either side, framed of one stick and slightly bent up at the toe, but those used by the rest were of very different make and more peculiar design. Though we purchased them from the Hudson's Bay Company at Churchill, they were made by the Chipewyan Indians. Their shoes are not made symmetrically, but are constructed with bulges upon their outer sides, and are formed of two pieces of wood, tied together at both ends and held apart in the middle by cross-bars, while the toes are turned up with a sharp curve.

Having reached the shelter of the Eastern Woods, and concluded the first day's march, a camping-place was chosen. The drivers of the teams at once proceeded to unharness the dogs, make beds for them of spruce boughs, and give them their daily meal of seal-blubber or fish. The other members of the party busied themselves in clearing away the snow, cutting down brush and firewood, and building the camp. This latter did not consist of a tent, shanty, or indeed covering of any kind, but simply of a wall of brush built crescent-shape to a height of three or four feet, and in such a position as to best afford shelter from the cutting wind. The two main elements of a good winter camp-ground are shelter and dry wood, both of which are indispensable.

The snow was cleared away from the inside of the wind-break, and in its stead spruce boughs were strewn to a depth of several inches, and in front of this a big fire kindled—and camp was complete.

These tasks ended, the preparation of supper was commenced. Bacon and biscuits were hauled out, while frying-pans and tea-kettles were brought and placed with their contents upon the fire. Fresh water had been found by cutting through the ice of a creek close by, so nothing was lacking.

Tin plates and cups, knives and forks were provided, but as we took hold of them they froze to our fingers, and before



## ON SNOWSHOES AND DOG-SLEDS

we could use them they had to be heated. After supper preparations were made for the night and for the morrow's tramp. Socks, duffles and moccasins, wet with perspiration from the day's march, were hung up before the fire to dry; robes and blankets were spread about the camp, and upon them our tired party assembled to enjoy a rest and smoke beside the fire before turning in for the night. Though cold, the night was beautifully calm and clear, and when from time to time the big dry sticks of wood were thrown upon the fire, showers of sparks ascended until they found hiding-places among the dark branches of the overhanging spruce trees.

Camp-fire stories and gossip were indulged in for an hour, then several logs were thrown upon the fire, and each man, rolled up in his blanket, and with feet toward the fire, lay down to sleep. There was little sleep for me, however, because of my knee, which gave me great pain during the night.

The next morning camp was called at five o'clock, and under the still starlit sky all hands rolled out into the keen frosty morning air. At the first streak of dawn, after breakfast and other preliminaries, our march was resumed.

It was yet dark in the woods, and to most of us there was no more indication of a trail in one place than in another; but our veteran guide, who possessed all the sagacity of the ideal red man, led the way, and all the rest of us had to do was to follow his tracks. Soon we emerged from the Eastern Woods, and getting into more open country, turned our course toward the south, crossing broad plains, diversified here and there by stunted, scattered trees, ice-covered ponds, and occasionally the thickly wooded valley of a winding stream. As we travelled on my leg caused me intense pain, so that it became impossible to keep up with the train. I hobbled along as well as I could for a time, but finding that I was seriously retarding the progress of the march, arrange-

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

ments were made to give me a lift on one of the sleds. Pierre and Louis were also becoming lame from the use of their snowshoes, to which they were not yet hardened, but were not seriously crippled.\*

During the second day from Churchill a herd of twenty or thirty deer was seen. Some of us were in no mood or condition to hunt, but Jimmie, the guide, our own man Jim, and Mr. Matheson went off in pursuit of the band. Several times during the afternoon we crossed the tracks of both deer and hunters, but when we came upon the big tracks of our guide we saw the first signs of success. He had evidently wounded a deer and was giving him a hot chase, for the Indian's strides were right upon those of the caribou, and to one side of the trail spatters of blood could be seen on the snow. Toward evening our train came up with Mr. Matheson and Jim, who had a long but fruitless run after the deer, but nothing could be seen of the guide. Some time after camp had been made for the night Jimmie walked in with a haunch of venison on his shoulder. He had wounded his deer early in the afternoon, but had been obliged to run him many miles before he could again come up with him. Lest the carcass, which was lying some distance from camp, should be devoured by wolves in the night, a team was harnessed and Jimmie himself, with another man, started off for the meat, which, a few hours later, they brought into camp. As we had had very little fresh meat for some time past, supper of venison steak was gratefully appreciated.

During the day's march numerous wolf and polar bear tracks had been crossed, but the caribou were the only animals seen.

\*For the benefit of anyone who may be not aware of the fact, I will explain that there are various kinds of lameness commonly produced by the prolonged use of snowshoes. In thus travelling, certain leg muscles which are only accustomed to perform light service are brought into vigorous use, and are very liable to become strained and cause much discomfort and suffering.

## ON SNOWSHOES AND DOG-SLEDS

The next day's tramp was a short one, not in actual miles travelled by some of us, but in distance made upon the course. We had, however, a good day's sport, for at different times during the day no less than eight deer were shot. My brother and I were not able to take part in the chase, for by this time, though I was beginning to recover, my brother was as badly crippled as I had been, and for a time had to be drawn on a sled. I should not, perhaps, say we took no part in the chase, for my brother made one remarkable shot.

At about the close of day, a small deer which Mr. Matheson had been following, and at which he had been practising for some time with my brother's rifle, stood still and looked at him with innocent amazement, at a distance of about three hundred yards from our train. Probably the cause of Mr. Matheson's bad shooting was the cross wind which was blowing strongly at the time; however, he gave up in disgust and returned the rifle to my brother, asking him to try a shot. My brother said it was useless for him to try, as the deer had now run still farther away, and he himself had only one leg to stand on. But, dropping on his knee, he fired once, and down came the deer.

Several of the best haunches of venison secured were loaded upon the sleds, but it was not thought wise to overload the teams by trying to carry too much. The bulk of the meat was "cached" where it was killed, to be picked up by the Company's teams on their return trip and taken to Churchill to replenish the larder. Our third camp was made in a strip of wood upon the bank of Salmon Creek, and to our Indians it will be memorable as being the place at which they had the "big feed," for it took three suppers to satisfy them that night. With my brother and myself the hours of darkness had ceased to bring repose. Our knees were so painful we did not sleep, but only turned restlessly from side to side until the return of dawn. Happily for us all, the weather had continued to be fair, with no extreme cold since the

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

commencement of the journey, which was particularly fortunate on account of poor Michel, who would doubtless have suffered had he been obliged to ride upon a sled all day during severe weather. As it was, we were able to keep him fairly comfortable by bundling him up in deer-skin robes and blankets.

On the fourth day, meeting with no deer, we made about twenty-seven miles, a good march under the circumstances. This brought us to the banks of Owl River, a stream two or three hundred yards in width, situated about midway between York and Churchill.

At dawn the next morning we were again marching southward, with the expectation of that day reaching Stony River, where William Westasecot, a brother of the guide, was encamped, and where our parties were to separate.

Three more deer were shot during the day, making a total of twelve for the trip, most of them victims of the Indian guide. About four o'clock in the afternoon we arrived at Stony River, but there was no Indian camp to be seen, and for a time we saw no signs of any human presence. We turned down the river, and ere long came upon the tracks of a solitary hunter. These Jimmie knew to be the tracks of his brother, and by following them a mile or two into a dense evergreen wood, we came upon the camp. It was a solitary tepee, situated in the heart of a snow-clad thicket of spruce trees and scrub, so dense that a bird could scarcely fly through it.

The lodge of the hunter was built of poles placed closely together, and arranged in the shape of a cone. The cracks between the poles were chinked tightly with moss, with which the tepee was then covered, excepting a foot or so at the top, where a hole was left for the chimney. An opening made in the wall to serve as a doorway was closed by a heavy curtain of deerskin, and as we lifted it we saw in the centre of the lodge, upon a square, mud-covered hearth, a

## ON SNOWSHOES AND DOG-SLEDS

smouldering wood fire, from which the circling smoke ascended to find its way through the chimney, while huddled around it by the wall were the old Indian, his squaw and their children. Deerskin cushions were offered us, and as we seated ourselves more wood was piled on the fire.

William Westasecot was a much older man than his brother, for his long flowing locks were already whitened with age, though he still appeared strong and athletic. Presents of tobacco were passed around; pipes were then lighted, and information sought and obtained, both by ourselves and the Indian. We found that William had seen and killed only one deer for some weeks past, and was now almost out of food and entirely out of ammunition. We supplied him with the latter, and told him where, within a day's travel, he might supply himself with the former.

From him we learned that the great Nelson River, which we expected to reach within two or three days, was still quite open, and that we should find a large boat, in which we might cross, some miles up the river. It was arranged, also, that William's elder son should accompany us to York, and assist by hauling a flat sled.

Guilford Long

May 27

1753

I WOOD  
1751

Richard J  
Johnson  
1753

R. BERT. FOWLER 1766

Geo: Taylor  
1787

FACSIMILE OF INSCRIPTION ON ROCK AT SLOOP'S COVE.

## CHAPTER XIX.

### *CROSSING THE NELSON.*

On the morning of the 11th of November our parties arranged to separate. The route of Mr. Matheson's party henceforth lay away to the eastward, while our path still led to the south, toward the banks of the Nelson River. A place was prepared on our own dogsled for crippled Michel, and the team of six dogs harnessed. Then the flat sleds, including one for Eli, the son of old William the Indian, were loaded with all that the dogs were unable to haul. Our supplies by this time were diminished to the extent of about two hundred and fifty pounds, so that, even with the additional weight of a man, the loads were lighter than at the outset of the journey.

Loads being thus readjusted, and our feet harnessed to snowshoes, we bade farewell to our friends from the Fort, as well as to those of the forest, and made a new start.

The weather was now unusually mild for the month of November, making the snow soft, and even wet in some places. This made travelling hard for the team, as it caused the ice-glazing to melt from the sled, and the mud-shoeing to wear and drag heavily upon the track. My brother and I still suffered much from our crippled limbs, but with considerable difficulty managed to keep up with the rest. After making a small day's march we camped for the night on the bank of a stream called by the Indians the White Bear Creek. The weather having turned colder during the night, making the prospects for travel more favorable, we started down stream the next morning upon the ice of the creek, and then



A HALF-BREED DOG-DRIVER.





## CROSSING THE NELSON

struck across country to Duck Creek, where we found a second Indian camp, occupied by two Crees and their families.

From one of these Indians, named Morrison, we purchased an additional dog with which to supplement our team. The price asked was a new dress for one of the squaws, but as we had no dress goods with us, the best we could offer was that the dress would be ordered at the Hudson's Bay Company's store at York, and delivered when the first opportunity afforded. After some consideration, and several pipes of tobacco, the offer was accepted, and with seven dogs in our team the journey resumed. We followed the creek till it led us out to the low, dreary coast at the mouth of the Nelson, where, having left the woods several miles inland, we were exposed to the full sweep of a piercingly cold, raw, south-west wind.

We are accustomed to thinking of a coast as a definite, narrow shore-line; but to the inhabitants of the Hudson Bay region the word conveys a very different meaning. There the coast is a broad mud and boulder flat, several miles in width, always wet, and twice during the day flooded by the tide. At this time of the year the mud flats were covered by rough broken ice and drifted snow, but above high-tide mark the surface of the country was level and the walking good. For several hours we tramped southward down the coast, with the cutting wind in our faces. During the afternoon we sought shelter, but finding none, our course was altered and shaped for the nearest wood, several miles inland.

The great advantage of travelling on the open plain is that there the snow is driven hard, and hence the walking is much better than in the woods, where the snow is soft and deep. Nevertheless, when the weather is rough—as it was on this occasion—the heavy walking is preferable to travelling in the open country in the teeth of the storm.

For the remainder of the day we bore southward, and

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

about sunset made camp on the south bank of a stream known as Sam's Creek, in a lovely snow-laden evergreen forest—an ideal Canadian winter woodland picture. From this beautiful but chilling scene our tramp was continued next morning at daylight. The low shore of the Nelson was again reached and followed until, about noon, a decided change in the character of the land was observed. A boulder clay bank commenced to make its appearance, and this as we advanced rapidly reached an elevation of twenty-five or thirty feet, and as we proceeded up the river, became higher and more thickly wooded. The change was a great relief from the level, treeless coast.

We were now well within the mouth of the great Nelson River, and could already, through the rising vapor, dimly see the outline of the opposite shore.

Considerable ice was coming down the river, and on this account we felt some anxiety as to crossing; but we were now within a few miles of the boat of which we had been informed, and it seemed possible that we might yet cross the stream before nightfall. In the middle of the afternoon we found the boat drawn up at the mouth of Heart Creek, where the old Indian hunter had left it. It was a large heavily built sailboat, capable of carrying our whole outfit in one load, but unfortunately the keel was deeply imbedded in the sand and there securely frozen. The only way to free it was to chop it out, and at this task as many hands were set as could find room to work. Long pries were cut and vigorously applied, but even with our united efforts we only managed to get the boat loosened by nightfall. We were obliged, therefore, to leave it until morning, and seek a place to camp.

During the night the wind, which had been blowing pretty strongly for two days past, increased to a gale from the north-west. This unwelcome guest did not come by himself, but brought with him his friend the snowstorm, and they

## CROSSING THE NELSON

two held high carnival all night, vying with each other as to which should cause the strange intruders in the grove the more discomfort. The gale shrieked through the trees and threatened to level our shelter; nor was he contented with this, but entered the camp and played pranks with our fire and blankets. The more stealthy snowstorm, making less noise than his blustering friend, before daylight had filled the ravine with white drifts and almost buried us.

Such was our condition on the morning of the 14th. As this was the ninth day from Churchill, our supply of provisions was about exhausted, but we were now only one day's march from York. After breakfast, despite the condition of the weather, all hands proceeded to the boat, and by a united effort managed to drag it out to the edge of the shore-ice; but the tide being low, there was no water to float it. We, therefore, had to await the flood-tide, which would not be up till about noon. Meanwhile the boat was loaded where it rested upon the sand, and at twelve o'clock, being lifted by the water, a canvas was hoisted, and through a dense fog which rose from the river we sailed up the shore to find a narrow part of the stream where we might avoid the broad shoals which extended out from the opposite shore.

Having proceeded some three miles up, to the vicinity of Flamboro' Head, a bold headland, our course was altered, and we steered into the fog for the south shore—about two miles distant. The wind was piercingly cold, instantly freezing every splash as it fell, and still blowing fresh, so that our ice-laden craft sped swiftly away on her course. Some floating ice was met, but successfully passed, and for a time it seemed as if the crossing would soon be effected; but suddenly there loomed out of the mist, right ahead, a dense field of ice, broken and rafted and hurrying down with the current. By putting the helm hard to starboard, and quickly dropping our canvas, we managed to keep clear of the mass; but what was now to be done?

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

The south shore was still hidden by dense volumes of vapor, and nothing could be seen in that direction but the adjacent fields of ice. On the north shore the dark outline of Flamboro' Head could still be discerned, and it was resolved thence to beat our retreat. We were, however, unable to sail against the wind; but taking to the oars, we managed, after a prolonged and difficult struggle, to regain the place whence we had started.

Once more on land a camp was made, and a fire kindled to thaw out our stiffened limbs, while we awaited an opportunity to cross. The mist continued the rest of the day, preventing us from making a second attempt, and so we lay up for the night.

Next morning the fog had cleared away, revealing a dismal sight. On the south side the river was frozen over, and the ice firmly set for a mile or more from shore, while the channel to the north was running full of heavy ice, making it quite impossible to use the boat, and equally impossible to effect a crossing on foot.

We had no alternative but to remain where we were and hope for a change in the condition of the river. Not the least unpleasant feature of this waiting was that our provisions were now gone.

The men were at once sent out to hunt, and returned in the evening with nine ptarmigan, with which a good *bouillon* was made for supper. Besides this, Eli, the Indian boy, gave us some comforting information as to the existence of a fish cache of his father's, not far distant. With this consoling knowledge we rolled up in our blankets and were soon dreaming of better times.

The next morning, there being no change in the river, two men and the dogs were sent after William's fish cache, and four others went off hunting, while the rest remained at camp collecting wood and keeping the fire burning.

We had nothing to eat this day until evening, when the

## CROSSING THE NELSON

sledding party returned with a little bag and can of pounded dried fish, two or three gallons of seal oil, and some seal biubber for the dogs; all of which, though not exactly luxurious, we were heartily glad to receive. Later two of the hunters returned with several ptarmigan and one or two rabbits, and last of all, sometime after dark, the remaining two—Jim and our noble guide—walked into camp carrying the carcass of a deer.

We had meat enough now, with careful use, to keep us from suffering for several days, and in order to guard against greed or waste, my brother and I took possession of the stock and divided it up equally among the party, each man receiving in all about ten pounds.

Without narrating in detail the incidents following, it will be sufficient to state that for ten long days our weary wait on the bleak banks of the Nelson was continued. From time to time the men were sent out to hunt, but except in the above instance, were obliged to return empty-handed.

On the morning of the 19th, the guide and Jim, provided with rifles, blankets, axes and snowshoes, started up the river, determined to find deer if there were any in the neighborhood, and also to investigate the possibilities of crossing the river higher up.

Four days of bitterly cold weather passed, the thermometer varying from 12 to 15 degrees below zero, and back came our discouraged hunters without having fired a shot. Food was becoming alarmingly scarce. A fox which happened in our way was trapped and eagerly devoured.

On the evening of the 22nd, though the mercury indicated 22 deg. below zero, the channel of the river above us was noticed to be less thickly blocked with ice than where we were encamped. It was resolved, if possible, to haul the boat a mile or two farther up stream, and there to launch and measure our strength with the floe.

All hands excepting Michel, who was still unable to walk.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

engaged in the work. The boat was launched, and by means of a long line we managed to tow it about half a mile up shore, but there the ice became so thick that we had to haul it out to prevent its being crushed. Our objective point was about a mile farther up, so an effort was made to haul the boat along the shore. It was all the ten of us could manage, but by about nightfall we had succeeded. The night being clear and light, we moved camp to the boat, that we might be prepared to cross in the morning if it were possible.

The next morning was bitterly cold and a fog was rising from the river. We towed the boat half a mile still farther up, until the Seal Islands were reached. Here we pushed out into the stream and commenced the struggle.

Every man was armed with an oar, a pole or an axe, and all of these were vigorously applied in forcing our way through the ice and the current. For a time we made fair progress, but before long were caught in the grip of the ice-pack and hurried down with the stream toward the sea.

We pushed and we pulled, we pounded and hacked, and at length got into a channel of open water. Again we were beset, but again got free, and so after much exertion we crossed the channel and landed upon the stationary ice. We had taken this for shore-ice, but were sorely disappointed to find it was only a jam in the middle of the channel.

What was now to be done? It was impossible to tow the boat around the upper end of the jam; and to allow it to drift down past the lower end would mean that we would be carried with the current out to sea and be irrevocably lost.

After carefully considering the situation, we concluded to portage across the island of ice and launch on the other side. Accordingly the boat was unloaded and piece by piece everything was carried safely across, but when we attempted to portage the boat, it and we continually broke through the surface. We were therefore obliged to cut a channel right through the island, the full width of the boat. After much

## CROSSING THE NELSON

labor this was accomplished, the boat hauled through, reloaded, and again pushed out into the flowing pack, which carried us, in spite of all our endeavors, far down toward the mouth of the river.

At length we had succeeded in getting within thirty feet of the solid south-shore ice, but even then, when the shore seemed almost within reach, we were nipped in the floe and again carried helplessly downward, until it seemed as if, after all, we were going to be carried out to sea.

We used every effort to free the boat, but all to no avail. At last, however, civil war among the floes caused a split and brought deliverance. A few rapid strokes and our old craft bumped against the solid ice.

The bowman, François, quick as a flash, sprang out with the end of the tow-line, while the rushing ice again caught the boat and bore it downward. François held on to the tow-line with all his might, but the tug-of-war was going against him; he yielded, fell, and for a short distance was dragged over the broken hummocks of ice; but bracing his feet against one of these, he formed himself into a veritable ice-anchor, and with herculean strength held us fast until others sprang out to his assistance.

All hands quickly disembarked, but as there was still between us and the shore a full mile of rough ice, liable to break adrift at any moment, no time was lost in exultation. The boat was unloaded, hauled up, and the tramp commenced for the shore. After much exertion we reached land, and every man felt a thrill of exultation that the Nelson was at last to the north of us.

We were all much chilled from exposure, so a fire was made in the edge of the woods. Spruce boughs were strewn about it to keep our feet from the snow, and the cheerful warmth was most gratefully enjoyed.

A little of the pounded dried-fish still remaining was fried on a pan with seal oil, the combination forming a dish

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

that might be described as fish-flavored chips steeped in oil; but with appetites such as ours it could be eaten—though I cannot say relished.

After this "refreshment" had been partaken of, and the stiffness thawed from our limbs, snowshoes were adjusted, and with a "Hurrah for York!" the march was resumed.

One more camp was made, and on the following day, the 24th of November, and the nineteenth day since leaving Churchill, we reached York Factory.



HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY'S STORE, YORK FACTORY.



DA

in oil;  
though

and the  
adjusted,  
med.  
ay, the  
leaving

## CHAPTER XX.

### *THROUGH THE FOREST AND HOME AGAIN.*

UPON arriving at York we were kindly received by the officer of the Hudson's Bay Company, Dr. Milne. Our men were given lodgings and rations in one of the many vacant houses in the Fort, while my brother and I were shown into the Doctor's bachelor quarters, and allowed to occupy the room of Mr. Mowat, the assistant trader, who was absent at the time.

The first articles essential to comfort were tubs and warm water. With travellers in the north, particularly during the winter season, the practice of performing daily ablutions is quite unheard of. This is not owing to neglect, but is rather an enforced custom due to the painful effects produced by the application of ice-cold water to the skin. During the previous summer and autumn my brother and I adhered to the habit of daily washing our hands and face, until our skin became so cracked and sore that we were forced to discontinue.

Besides Dr. Milne and an old-time servant, Macpherson, Mr. Mowat, now temporarily absent, was the only other white resident in York. He had, only a few days before our arrival, been sent off with two Indians as a relief party to look for the Company's autumn mail, which was now more than six weeks overdue. The mail should have come down the Hays River from Oxford House, 250 miles distant, before the close of navigation, but as nothing had yet been heard of it or the party, fears were entertained as to their safety. It was thought they must have been lost in the river.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

As to York Factory, it is one of those places of which it may be said "the light of other days has faded." In the earlier days of the Hudson's Bay Company it was an important centre of trade, the port at which all goods for the interior posts were received, and from which the enormous harvests of valuable furs were annually shipped. Such business naturally necessitated the building of large store-houses and many dwellings to shelter the goods and provide accommodation for the large staff of necessary servants. As late as the summer of 1886, when I visited York, there was a white population of about thirty, besides a number of Indians and half-breeds in the employ of the Company; but things had now changed. Less expensive ways of transporting goods into the interior than freighting them hundreds of miles up the rivers in York boats now existed, and as the local supply of furs had become scarce, serious results necessarily followed. Gradually the staff of servants had been dismissed or removed, and one by one the dwellings vacated, until York was now almost a deserted village. The Indians also had nearly all gone to other parts of the country.

One of the first duties receiving our attention upon reaching York was the placing of poor crippled Michel in the doctor's hands. His frozen feet, still dreadfully sore, were carefully attended to, and it was thought that in the course of a few weeks they might be sufficiently recovered to allow him to walk. As to taking him any farther with us, that was unadvisable, for he was now in the care of a physician, and in a place where he would receive all necessary attention. Besides, we would have no means of carrying him, unless upon a sled drawn by our own men, and such an additional burden would seriously retard progress. It was therefore admitted by all that the best plan was to leave Michel in Dr. Milne's care, to be forwarded as soon as he was well enough to walk. This was promptly arranged, and with as

which it  
In the  
was an  
for the  
normous  
uch busi-  
e store-  
provide  
nts. As  
ere was  
mber of  
any; but  
ransport-  
undreds  
and as  
s results  
nts had  
vellings  
ge. The  
of the

n reach-  
el in the  
re, were  
e course  
to allow  
that was  
ian, and  
attention.  
n, unless  
dditional  
therefore  
ichel in  
was well  
with as

## THROUGH THE FOREST AND HOME AGAIN

little delay as possible preparations were made for departure. Two dogs from our Churchill team were purchased outright from Jimmie, who happened to be the owner of them, and a third having been secured from Morrison, the Indian, we only required one more to make up a fair team, and this was procured from the Doctor. Another team was hired from the Company, and it was at first thought, with the aid of these two, we might comfortably make the twelve days' trip to Oxford House. But when supply bills were made out it was found that, with the assistance of only two teams for so long a trip, each man would have to haul a heavily-loaded toboggan. The Doctor therefore, with some difficulty, raised a third team to accompany us for two days on the journey.

The next necessary preparation was the procuring of a guide and drivers for the teams. As the mail-carriers and two other Indians, Mr. Mowat's companions, had already gone to Oxford House, few men were left at the Fort who knew the route; but happily a man was found who turned out to be another brother of our guide from Churchill. He was a very dark Indian, younger than Jimmie, and of much less noble appearance, and was known by the name of Charlie. He was said to be well fitted for the purpose, and we felt that a brother of our guide could not be a very poor man. Our party, including Arthur Omen, the driver from Churchill, who had determined to accompany us out of the country, was now complete. Twelve days' rations, consisting of bacon, flour, sugar and tea, were served out to each man, with a warning to make them last through the trip or suffer the consequences. The flour was then baked up into the more convenient form of cakes. Dog-fish was also provided, and all being loaded upon the three sleds and two toboggans, the second stage of our sledding journey was begun on Tuesday morning, the 28th of November. The dog-sleds were not the same as those we had used in traversing the

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

hard driven snow of the plains, but were what are known as "flat sleds," or large toboggans, they being better suited to woodland travel.

The condition of our party on leaving York was vastly different from what it had been on leaving Churchill. The two hundred mile tramp, although crippling some of us and causing all plenty of exertion, had hardened our muscles so much that, with the ten days' "lie up" on the bank of the Nelson River, and a four days' rest at York, we were now in first-class walking trim, and started up the Hays River at a brisk pace.

The first day's march was upon the river ice, and our first camp was made on the bank, in two feet of snow, beneath the shelter of the evergreens. Beyond this our course led through the woods to the north of the river, and by many winding ways we journeyed on.

On the morning of the third day the assisting team from York, leaving its load with us, returned to the Factory. A readjustment of loads was then made, and with the two remaining teams we pushed on, though now more slowly, for Oxford House.

At about noon on the 1st of December we were pleased to meet Mr. Mowat and party, returning with the long-looked-for mail, all safe. The delay in the arrival of the mail had been caused by one of the Indians becoming ill soon after leaving Norway House, and having to return to that post. After a brief halt, each party now having the advantage of the other's track, we started on, pursuing opposite ways, they to their lonely home on the ice-bound coast of Hudson Bay, and we towards ours in the more congenial south.

At this time the temperature remained pretty steady at about 25 degrees below zero, but with the exertion of the march during the day, and the shelter of blankets and the

DA

known as  
limited to

s vastly  
all. The  
of us and  
muscles so  
k of the  
ere now  
ys River

our first  
beneath  
urse led  
oy many

am from  
tory. A  
the two  
owly, for

leased to  
g-looked-  
the mail  
ill soon  
n to that  
ne advan-  
opposite  
coast of  
congenial

steady at  
on of the  
s and the



OUR SLED PARTY DRAWN UP AT A DESERTED CABIN FOR LUNCH



## THROUGH THE FOREST AND HOME AGAIN

warmth of the camp-fire at night, we managed to keep fairly comfortable.

About sixteen miles beyond a large stream known as Fox River, we came upon an ancient track. This in earlier days had been travelled by oxen and Red River carts, and over it hundreds of tons of freight had annually been hauled; but now it was so grown up with trees that it often taxed the skill of the guide to keep it. The track led directly to Oxford, so that from this forward it was to be our road.

Since leaving the banks of the Hays River no timber of any value had been seen. The wood had all been black spruce of a very scrubby character, but now poplar, birch and jack-pine were occasionally met with.

On December the 4th the temperature ran down to 31 degrees below zero, but on the following day this record was beaten, and 40 degrees below was registered. In this low temperature we naturally found some difficulty in keeping warm. When the day's tramp was over, and our position taken for the night beside the camp-fire, it was found necessary either to slowly revolve or frequently reverse our position. It was a question of roasting or freezing, or rather doing both at the same time. While one's face was turned to the fire and enduring a roasting heat, his back was freezing, and as the position was reversed the roasting and freezing process was also reversed. Our meals, after being prepared, were served up on the hot pan to keep them warm while eating, but even so they were sometimes frozen to the frying-pan before they could be disposed of.

During the afternoon of the 4th and the morning of the 5th of December we crossed Deer Lake, twenty-seven miles in length, and at either end of the lake found camps of Indians. From one of them we purchased some fine white-fish, which they were catching through the ice.

By this time our guide Charlie had become pretty badly used up by the march. He was no longer able to hold the

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

lead, but our own men managed to keep the track, and Charlie hobbled along behind.

During the evening of the 6th and the morning of the 7th of December we crossed a succession of thirteen small lakes and some open plains, but the afternoon of the latter day saw a marked change in the character of the country. With the exception of two or three isolated patches, we had seen nothing in the shape of timber of any value since leaving York—indeed, I might say since leaving Churchill, or even a thousand miles or so farther back on the road. But now we had reached a heavy forest of white spruce, jack-pine, poplar and birch trees, and the change was a pleasing one.

For a distance of six or eight miles we trudged through this heavy forest, and then, just at nightfall, reached the shore of Back Lake, really an extension of Oxford Lake. One of my brother's feet had become so sore during the day that he had been obliged to walk with only one snowshoe. On this account we had fallen several miles behind the leaders of the party, and when we arrived at the shore of the lake above described, nothing could we see of the outfit, and both because of darkness and the hard surface of the snow, it was with great difficulty we were able to follow the track. It led away across the lake, and for a time we managed to follow it. While doing so we carefully noted its bearing, but soon the faint tracks could no longer be followed, for the night was becoming dark. We feared to lose them, as there might be a change in their course and then our bearing would not lead us aright. For a time, upon hands and knees, we tried to follow the trail, but could not keep upon it continuously.

Keeping as straight a course as possible, we pressed on through the darkness toward the distant shore, the dark outline of which could just be discerned against the lighter sky. At length we reached the shore, when, after passing through a narrow strip of woods, to our joy there suddenly flashed



ADA

ack, and  
of the 7th  
small lakes  
atter day  
y. With  
had seen  
e leaving  
l, or even  
But now  
jack-pine,  
sing one.  
d through  
ached the  
ord Lake.  
g the day  
snowshoe.  
ehind the  
ore of the  
outfit, and  
the snow,  
the track.  
managed to  
earing, but  
ed, for the  
n, as there  
ur bearing  
hands and  
keep upon

pressed on  
e dark out-  
lighter sky.  
ing through  
only flashed

## THROUGH THE FOREST AND HOME AGAIN

out before us, a few yards ahead, the lights of Oxford House. A few minutes later we were the guests of Mr. and Mrs. Isbister, one of the most hospitable old couples it has ever been my good fortune to meet. Mr. Isbister was the local agent of the Hudson's Bay Company, and was a thorough old-time Canadian, one of those men filled with reminiscences of early Canadian life in the north, and whose many stories were a delight to hear



NORWAY HOUSE, LAKE WINNIPEG.

Having reached Oxford in safety, preparations were at once commenced for our journey to the next post—Norway House—150 miles farther west. Some delay was occasioned in getting dogs, but at length three miserable, half-starved teams were secured, and with a new guide and drivers we set out on the third stage of our winter journey. Without narrating the many incidents by the way, I need only say that after a six days' tramp, with the thermometer in the neighborhood of 40 degrees below zero, we arrived safely

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

at Norway House, an important Hudson's Bay Company's post, situated at the northern extremity of Lake Winnipeg. Two of the dog-teams procured at Oxford had been intended to haul my brother and myself, and for a time they did so, but the poor animals were in such a wretched condition from the effects of former hard work that we preferred to walk most of the time, and before we reached our destination



A HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY'S TRADING-POST IN WINTER.

considered ourselves fortunate that we escaped having to haul the dogs.

At Norway House the difficulties of the journey, so far as my brother and I were concerned, were practically ended. Enough strong, capable dogs were here secured to admit of our travelling in carryalls for the remaining four hundred miles still separating us from West Selkirk, the northern terminus of the railway; but, of course, the Indians had to

company's  
Winnipeg.  
intended  
y did so,  
ion from  
to walk  
stination



WINTER.

having to  
y, so far  
ly ended.  
admit of  
hundred  
northern  
as had to

## THROUGH THE FOREST AND HOME AGAIN

stick to their snowshoes. It was here decided to divide our party, and send the three western men home, assisted by the team of Eskimo dogs which had accompanied us the whole six hundred miles from Churchill. The valley of the Saskatchewan River would be their most direct course, in taking which route they would reach their several homes by travelling about the same distance as ourselves. Arthur Omen, the driver from Churchill, chose to go up the Saskatchewan with the western men, so that of the original party there only remained the two Iroquois, Pierre and Louis, to accompany my brother and myself. With the least possible delay four good dog-teams, as many drivers, and a guide were procured from Mr. J. K. Macdonald, the Hudson's Bay Company's factor, who showed us much kindness, and two days before Christmas the last and longest division of our journey was begun.

My brother and I were now warmly rolled up in robes and blankets and lying in our carryalls. Supplies and baggage were all loaded upon the two remaining sleds, and with a driver trotting along beside or behind each team, the guide running before, and the two Iroquois sometimes before and sometimes behind, we travelled on an almost due south course over the ice near the shore of Lake Winnipeg. About the same time that we started for the south, the other section set out across the lake to the westward for the mouth of the Saskatchewan River.

Our teams, of four dogs each, were for the most part fine powerful animals, and we soon found there was no necessity for my brother or myself exerting ourselves more than we desired. The teams travelled all day, and, indeed, day after day, at a rapid trot, sometimes breaking into a gallop, so that it gave the Indians all they could do to keep up with them.

Taking smooth and rough together, we made an average of about forty miles per day, and some days as much as

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

forty-six or forty-seven miles. When we had made about half the distance to Selkirk, and were in the neighborhood of a fishing station at the mouth of Berens River, poor Pierre played out; but, most opportunely, we met a man teaming fish to Selkirk and secured a passage for him, while we ourselves pushed on. When we had made another hundred miles, Louis, the remaining Iroquois, also became crippled. Arrangements were made to have him, too, driven in with a horse and sleigh, and without delay we pursued our journey.

At length, after a long and rapid trip, which occupied ten days, on the evening of the 1st of January, 1894, under the light of the street lamps of the little town, our teams trotted up the streets of West Selkirk, thus completing a canoe and snowshoe journey of three thousand two hundred miles.

I need hardly say that the telegraph office was soon found, and messages despatched to anxious friends, who, having heard nothing from us for many months, had begun to entertain grave fears for our safety. Thirteen hundred miles more of travel by rail brought us home again after an absence of just eight months.



OUR PARTY ON THE RETURN TRIP.

ADA

de about  
hborhood  
er, poor  
t a man  
for him,  
e another  
o became  
o, driven  
pursued

upied ten  
under the  
ns trotted  
 canoe and  
miles.  
on found,  
o, having  
begun to  
hundred  
gain after



DOG-TRAIN AND CARRYALL.



## CHAPTER XXI.

### *HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET.*

FORT CHURCHILL may be regarded as the gateway through which, we have every reason to believe, in the no very distant future, a large share of the products of our western provinces is destined to pass on its way to the great markets of the world. This statement is not made thoughtlessly, nor without some knowledge of the subject, for since the years 1885 and 1886, when, as hydrographer and meteorological observer on the Gordon expedition to Hudson Bay, I spent a year and a half on its desolate shores, I have made the study of Hudson Bay and the question of its navigation and development a part of my life's work; and it is because of this fact, and the consequent acquisition of a considerable amount of first-hand knowledge of the subject, that I have been prompted to inscribe this chapter.

Although discovered nearly three hundred years ago, Hudson Bay has remained, up to the present time, a comparatively unknown sea, and an entirely undeveloped source of wealth to our country. Although possessing an area five times as large as our Great Lakes combined, and a tidal coastline of about six thousand miles, at no place is this as yet accessible by any form of improved highway; and it can still be reached, from the settled parts of Canada, only by means of canoes or other small boats following the routes of some of our God-given streams.

Into the bay are discharged a score of mighty rivers, some of which rank among the largest on the Continent, although an unfortunate feature of many of them is that they are extremely shallow at their mouths.

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

This is not so, however, in the case of the Churchill, the mouth of which, on being surveyed by me, was found to afford an excellent natural harbor, with nine fathoms of water at low tide up to the entrance, and from four to five fathoms within.

A map of this harbor, prepared from my own surveys, made on different occasions, is presented herewith, and shows the relative positions of the various points of interest, such as the Hudson's Bay Company's post, old Fort Prince of Wales, the Mission station, Sloops Cove (where the *Furnace* and *Discovery* wintered in 1741), the whaling station on the east side of the harbor, the available anchorage for ships, the best railway terminal site, and, lastly, the Police Barrack, only recently established, and occupied by Major Moodie and his men.

### HISTORICAL SUMMARY.

Before dealing with the more important questions of the resources and navigation of the bay, it may be of interest to briefly review the history of its discovery and exploration. As every Canadian schoolboy knows, the discovery of the bay was made by Henry Hudson, in the year 1610. Being an experienced navigator in foreign seas, he was given command of the *Discovery*—a small vessel of 55 tons, outfitted by English capitalists—and in this he set sail for the discovery of the long-looked-for North-west Passage. In the accomplishment of this object he was unsuccessful, although a greater achievement attended his efforts, in winning which distinction he forfeited his own life and that of his son, both of whom, with a loyal carpenter, John King, were sent adrift in an open boat by a mutinous crew, the leaders of which were soon afterwards murdered by Eskimos. Such was the first tragic scene enacted by civilized men in the great theatre of Hudson Bay.

Although the discovery of the bay is attributed to Hudson,



# ADA

rchill, the  
found to  
athoms of  
ur to five

a surveys,  
and shows  
rest, such  
Prince of  
e Furnace  
ion on the  
ships, the  
Barracks.  
oodie and

ons of the  
interest to  
exploration.  
ery of the  
10. Being  
given com-  
s, outfitted  
the discov-  
the accom-  
although a  
g which dis-  
on, both of  
nt adrift in  
which were  
as the first  
theatre of

to Hudson.



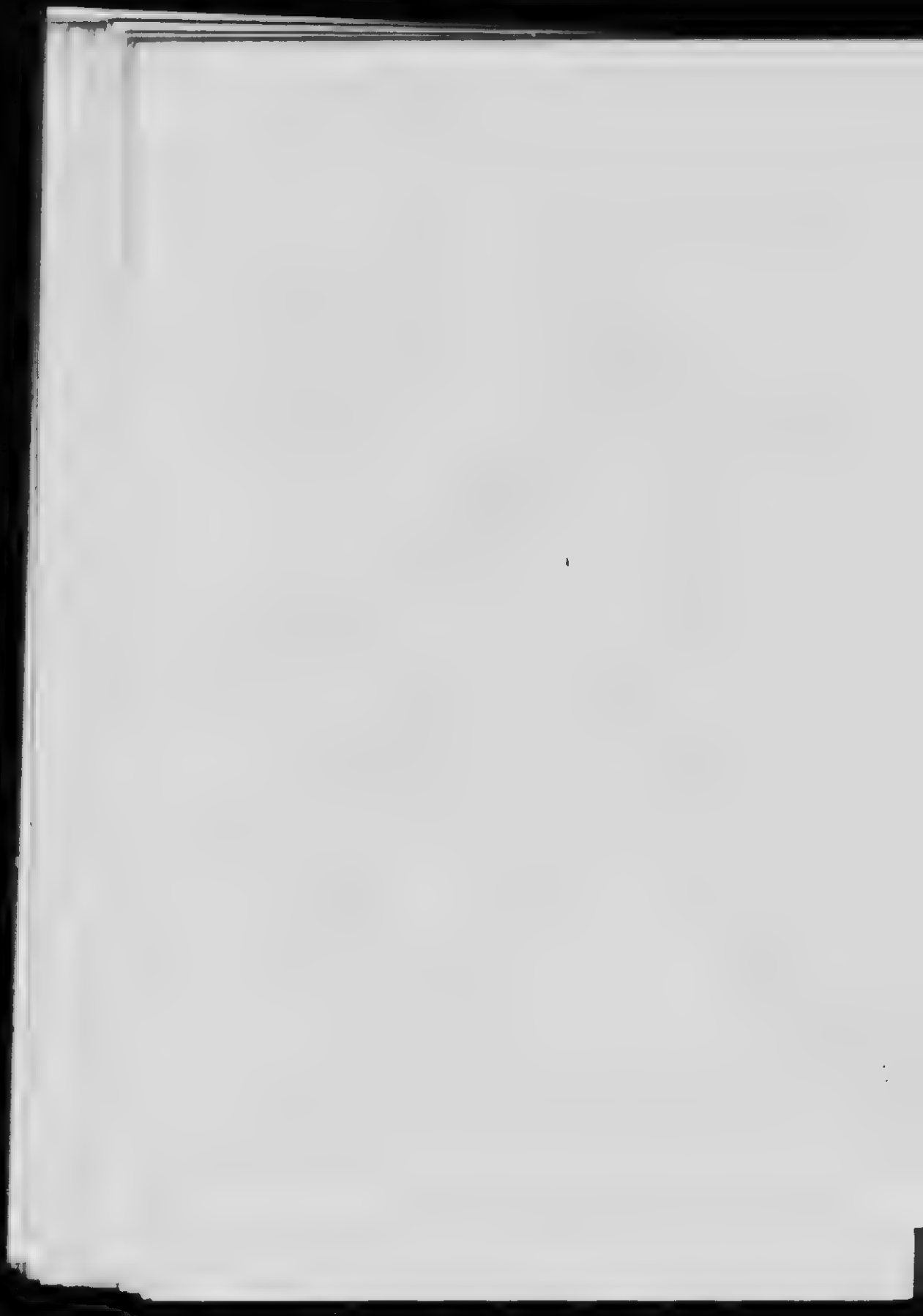
— MAP —  
— of —  
**Churchill Harbour**

J. W. TYRRELL C.E.D.  
— 1908 —

Scale: Linear 1 Mile

Note: Soundings are in fathoms L.M.  
Spring Tides 6.5 ft. High Water 6.0 ft.





## HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET

that of Hudson Strait was made by Sir Martin Frobisher, who, in command of three small vessels, two of 25 tons and one of only 10 tons, sighted the eastern entrance to the strait in July, 1576, and two years later, with a fleet of fifteen ships in quest of ore, entered Hudson Strait and "sailed several days westward through it."

John Davis, in 1585, rediscovered the strait, and, in 1602, George Weymouth, in the *Discovery*, sailed a considerable distance up it.

Following the discovery of the bay by Hudson, Sir Thomas Button re-entered it in 1612, and after spending the summer in exploring the northern and western shores, he wintered in the mouth of the Nelson River, and was thus the first to successfully pass a winter in the bay and to return with the fruits of his labors.

In the summer of 1615 Baffin passed through Hudson Strait and into the bay in search of a north-west passage, but finding none, he returned the same season to England.

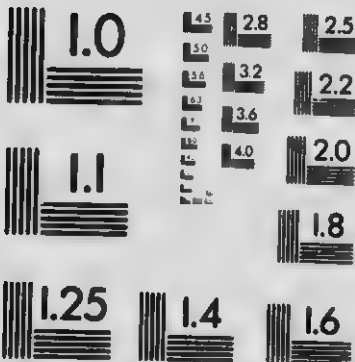
In May, 1619, Captain Jens Munk, in command of a Danish Arctic expedition, sailed from Copenhagen with two small vessels and a total of sixty-four men. He reached the entrance to Hudson Strait (*Fretum Christiani*, as named by him), on July the 11th, and after experiencing much difficulty, and escaping many dangers in his little crafts, chiefly from meeting with drifting ice, he entered Hudson Bay, and apparently crossed it in a comparatively direct course to the mouth of the Churchill River, which harbor he entered early in September, and was thus the first white man, so far as we know, to enter that port.

Munk named the country in the vicinity of Churchill *Novam Daniam*, and after securing his vessels as best he could, he sent out exploring parties, both to the north and the south. Finding no better harbor on the coast than at Churchill, he decided to spend the winter there, and accordingly moored his ships, as nearly as can be ascertained from



# MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



**APPLIED IMAGE Inc**

1653 East Main Street  
Rochester, New York 14609 USA  
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone  
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

his own description and crude sketch, directly in front of the present Hudson's Bay Company's trading station. Two or more small buildings appear to have been erected upon the west side of the harbor, and this constituted the earliest known occupation of this most important harbor on the shores of Hudson Bay. The experiences of that early occupation, moreover, form one of the saddest pages in its whole history, for without relating all the terrible details of their sufferings, we are informed by Munk that he himself and two sailors were the only survivors of that awful winter. The immediate cause of their destruction was due to a lingering disease, which was undoubtedly scurvy, the result of inactivity, uncleanness and dissipation.

During the year 1631 two expeditions, under the respective commands of Captain Luke Fox and Captain Thomas James, were engaged in exploratory work in Hudson Bay—the latter wintering on Charlton Island, where because of inexperience and ignorance much suffering was endured. Both expeditions returned to England, whence they had sailed, without having accomplished anything of substantial importance.

So little interest resulted from the efforts of these last two expeditions that for a period of thirty-seven years we have no record of other ships having visited the bay; but history informs us that in 1659 information concerning the Great Bay was obtained by two French-Canadian fur traders, Radisson and Groseilliers, who were so impressed with the possibilities of trade in that quarter that they returned to Quebec with the object of interesting capital in a project to establish permanent trading-posts on the shores of the vast inland sea.

Meeting with opposition rather than support at Quebec, Groseilliers sought assistance at the English settlement of Boston, and later at Paris, but at all of these places he failed in the accomplishment of his purpose. However, at

## HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET

Paris, in 1667, the British Ambassador, Lord Preston, hearing of the proposals of the French-Canadians, sent them with a letter to Prince Rupert in England, who received them well and endorsed their project. Others became interested with him, and the result was that a vessel of fifty tons—the *Nonsuch*—was outfitted, placed under the command of Captain Zachius Gillam, and, accompanied by Groseilliers, was dispatched on the 3rd of June, 1668, as the first trading-ship to the shores of Hudson Bay.

The *Nonsuch* reached the strait on August 4th, and passed through into the bay on the 19th of the same month. Sailing southward down the eastern main coast, the mouth of the Rupert River was reached on the 29th of September, and here a stockaded log fort was built, and named Fort Charles, after the King. This was the first trading-post established in the bay. Here the members of the expedition spent the winter with fruitful results, and upon the return of Gillam to England, the following summer, Prince Rupert and his associates applied to Charles II. for an exclusive charter to trade in Hudson Bay and the territory beyond. This was granted on the 2nd of May, 1670, whereupon one Charles Bayly was immediately sent out, as the first governor of the Company, to establish Fort Rupert, at the mouth of the Rupert River.

Gradually from year to year other forts were established at Albany, Moose, Eastmain, Severn, York and Churchill, but not without serious opposition from the French, who opposed every move and made conditions most uncomfortable for the English company, until the year 1713, when the struggle was terminated, and by the Treaty of Utrecht the French relinquished all claims to the territory about Hudson Bay.

In 1719 two vessels, under the command of Captain James Knight, sailed from England with a view of exploring the northern portion of Hudson Bay, and the



## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

mythical "Anian Strait," but the expedition became wrecked near the east end of Marble Island, upon which a house was erected. In this the survivors of the ill-fated crews existed for several years, until they all miserably perished from starvation and scurvy, the facts not becoming known until the year 1769, when they were obtained by Samuel Hearne, who was that year engaged in whale fishing at the island, and accidentally discovered the remnants of the expedition, and from the Eskimos learned the sad details of their fate.

Time will not permit, in this brief summary, to even outline the discoveries of all the expeditions that have sailed into Hudson Bay, but the names and dates of some of those following are here given:

Dobbs in 1737; Middleton to Churchill and Chesterfield Inlet in 1741; Dobbs to Port Nelson and Chesterfield Inlet in 1746; Christopher to Chesterfield Inlet in 1761; Norton to Chesterfield Inlet in 1762; Samuel Hearne, who accomplished one of the most notable journeys in history, from Fort Churchill to the mouth of the Coppermine River, during the years 1769-70-71-72; Captain Charles Duncan to Rankin and Chesterfield inlets in 1791; Sir W. E. Parry, in the *Fury* and *Hecla*, to Fox Channel and Fury and Hecla Strait in 1821; Captain Back to north of bay, in the *Terror*, in 1836; Dr. John Rae from Churchill to Repulse Bay, Committee Bay and Gulf of Boothia, from 1845 to 1847.

The famous but ill-fated Franklin expedition of 1845 did not enter Hudson Bay, and is, therefore, not included in our summary, nor are the forty or more relief expeditions which engaged in the search for the lost explorers. It may be of interest, however, to note in passing that it was Dr. John Rae—relatives of whom still live in Hamilton and Dundas—who, in 1853-54, obtained the first definite information regarding the fate of Franklin and his men. Four

## HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET

years later Captain F. L. McClintock cleared up the mystery by discovering a record from the lost expedition, and full information as to its awful sufferings and complete destruction, off the shores of King William Island.

Following the explorations of Dr. John Rae, discovery in the Hudson Bay district experienced a long period of stagnation, but with the opening up and development of the Canadian West the necessity of improved and extended transportation facilities presented itself, and the Dominion Government undertook to investigate the possibilities of Hudson Bay and Strait as a commercial route to Europe. For the accomplishment of this important undertaking, Lieut. A. R. Gordon, R.N., was placed in command of the steamer *Neptune* in the year 1884, and the steamer *Alert* in the years 1885 and 1886, and, with the assistance of a strong staff of officers, thorough and continuous meteorological, tidal, magnetic and ice observations were taken at seven of the most salient points, both winter and summer, for the space of three years.

During the summer seasons hydrographic and topographical surveying was vigorously prosecuted, and it was largely in this department of the work that the present writer was engaged. During the winter of 1885-86 I so acted as observer at Big Island, near the centre of the north shore of Hudson Strait—probably the most advantageous observation point, both because of its prominent geographical position and its high altitude of four hundred and fifty feet above the sea level. In 1893, in company with Brother, J. B. Tyrrell, then of the Canadian Geological Survey, as in this volume related, and again in 1900, it fell to my lot to revisit the shores of Hudson Bay.

During the summer of 1897, Commander Wakeham, in the steamer *Diana*, was again sent to Hudson Strait by the Canadian Government to further investigate conditions there; and during the years 1903 and 1904, A. P. Low, in

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

command of the steamer *Neptune*, on behalf of the Government of Canada, made a most fruitful voyage into the bay and channels to the north of it, and has since published the most complete and comprehensive report upon that section of the continent that has yet appeared.

During the summer of 1905 it yet again fell to my lot to revisit the bay, on which occasion I made a complete survey of the harbor of Fort Churchill, the most important upon the coast.

Besides the names above-mentioned, many others have conducted explorations in the bay of greater or less extent, particularly among the mariners of the Hudson's Bay Company. Special credit is also due for the extensive work of Dr. Robert Bell, of the Geological Survey, who has contributed largely to our general store of knowledge regarding the Hudson Bay district.

### RESOURCES.

Under this heading we have to consider one of the important questions in connection with the opening up and development of the Hudson Bay region. If the local resources are of limited extent and little value, then the difficulties of creating an outlet for commerce from our western wheat-fields to Europe by way of Hudson Bay and Strait assume a serious aspect; but if it be true that the local resources are of large extent and great value, surely the success of a well-advised railway project to some point on the coast of Hudson Bay is assured.

Classifying the natural resources of the Hudson Bay district under the three great divisions of the Animal, Vegetable and Mineral kingdoms, I will begin with the first and briefly review the whole subject, dwelling chiefly upon such items as have come under my personal observation.

## HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET

### I. *Animal Products.*

By far the most valuable animal product is the *Right, Bowhead or Greenland Whale*, which is found in the northern parts of Hudson Bay and Strait. It is the species from which the whalebone of commerce is derived, as well as a large amount of valuable oil. It is deeply to be regretted that these precious creatures are much less abundant than they were some years ago, but still they are well worth the looking after, as the commercial value of a single specimen ranges from ten to twenty thousand dollars, depending upon the size and consequent production of bone and oil.

According to a statement contained in the report of Lieut. A. R. Gordon (1886), the average value of each whaling cargo from the year 1846 to 1875 was \$47,220, and according to the report of A. P. Low (1904), from information supplied by the noted American haler, Captain George Cromer, the average value of a whaling cargo from Hudson Bay between the years 1891 and 1904 was about \$35,000—sixty-eight whales having been captured upon nineteen whaling voyages, all of which latter were American.

Perhaps second in importance and value to the *Right Whale* fishery is that of the *White Whale*—a much smaller though a very much more abundant animal. In point of numbers I would judge that the white whale far exceeds all other species of water mammals combined, for in many places and at various times I have seen the surface of the bay appear as a living, plunging mass of white from the presence of great schools of these creatures; nor do they appear to be appreciably diminishing, as some other animals are. I observed them in apparently as great numbers about the mouths of the Churchill and Nelson rivers in 1905 as I had in the same localities twenty years before, although large numbers of them are annually captured at various

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

points by the Hudson's Bay Company, who find in them a profitable source of revenue—the oil and hide products of one animal being worth, on the average, about thirty dollars.

The *Narwhal*, or *Sea Unicorn*, is another valuable species of whale found in the northern parts of the bay and strait, but it is of comparatively rare occurrence. The remarkable feature about this animal is that it possesses a long, straight, spiral horn of very fine ivory, extending from the upper jaw directly in line with the body. The length of the horn in an adult male is frequently about eight feet, and in value it is worth from \$2.50 to \$3.00 per pound.

The *Walrus* fishery probably ranks next in value to that of the white whale, for this, the largest species of the seal family, is abundant almost everywhere throughout the northern parts of Hudson Bay and Strait. In 1885-86 I met with great numbers of them along the north shore of Hudson Strait, also in the vicinity of the Digges, the Ottawa and the Sleeper islands, about the sandy shores of which they delight to sport and feed upon the clams and other shellfish, which they dig from the sand in the shallow waters with their long ivory tusks provided for this purpose. According to A. P. Low, the present southerly limit of the walrus is found at the North Belcher Islands, in about latitude 57 degrees, although, as is the case with many other animals, its range was formerly much farther south. Mr. Low also reports that under persistent hunting, of late years, the number of these animals is being greatly diminished, and such being the case it would seem to be most desirable that legal restrictions should be made to prevent the wholesale slaughter and ultimate extermination of these noble creatures, whose existence is almost essential to that of the native tribes of Eskimos.

Since a walrus, like most other seals, sinks immediately when killed in the water, a very large percentage of those killed by existing methods of hunting are completely lost

## HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET

The harpoon and lance, with attached line and float, should therefore be the only implements used in the hunt for these animals. From a sportsman's point of view the walrus furnishes one of the grandest fields for sport upon this continent. During my many years of travel through the wilds of northern Canada I have had occasion to hunt and kill most of the existing varieties of big game, but none that has afforded more real sport and excitement than the walrus. Upon one occasion, when in company with Dr. R. Bell and a boat's crew of eleven men in all, near the shore of the Digges Islands, we were suddenly confronted by a herd of about fifty walruses, all of them snorting and blowing and looking like so many water demons.

Whether out of curiosity or upon mischief bent I know not, but with heads and shoulders above the water and their long, curved, ivory tusks gleaming in the sunlight, they charged straight for our position, and so terrified some of our Newfoundland sailors that they were with difficulty prevented from jumping overboard into the sea. We were not properly outfitted at the time for walrus hunting, being armed only with five Winchester rifles, but with these we opened a rapid fire and demoralized the band before any of them reached our boat.

Many of them were killed, and sank in deep water before they could be secured, but to one we managed to make fast, and towed him to the shore—a shelving sandy beach. But when we undertook to haul him out of the water, we realized for the first time the enormity of his bulk and weight. Although eleven able-bodied men, we could not without “purchase” commence to pull the carcass from the water, and even with a parbuckle were only half successful.

Later, during the spring of 1886, when stationed at Big Island, Hudson Strait, I fitted up my boat in proper shape with harpoons, lines, floats and lances for hunting these creatures, and for a short time pursued the avocation of a

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

walrus hunter with success, using a rifle only to dispatch my victims after they had been secured by one or more harpoons with attached floats. The few hides that I procured at that time were sold in the English market for 6d. per pound, and this, I believe, is about the market price to-day. The weight of a single hide will average about two hundred and fifty pounds, and the ivory tusks, which weigh anywhere from two to ten pounds, are worth about 75c. per pound. The oil derived from walrus blubber is of rather inferior quality, and therefore not of great value. The total marketable products of a single adult walrus will, therefore, be worth between \$30.00 and \$40.00.

The *Square-flipper*, *Bearded* or *Big Seal* ranks next in size to the walrus, being commonly about eight feet in length, and is widely distributed, though not very numerous. The hide is largely used by the Eskimos for the best grades of leather, and the oil product also is of considerable value.

The *Harp* or *Saddleback Seal* is the species most commonly found in great numbers off the banks of Newfoundland, but it is not frequently met with in Hudson Bay, though quite commonly in the strait. It is valuable for hide and oil products.

The *Ringed* or *Jar Seal*, though the smallest, is the most common and abundant species found in Hudson Bay and adjacent waters. Its flesh, with that of the walrus and the reindeer, forms the chief food of the Eskimos, whilst its pelt is equally useful in the manufacture of tents and clothing. The hide and oil products of this seal would form valuable articles of commerce.

The *Harbor* or *Freshwater Seal* is the fifth and last variety of this animal found in Hudson Bay or adjacent waters, and though not numerous, it is widely distributed. It is highly prized by the Eskimos because of its beautiful dark, rich furry coat, that of the young being soft and rich, somewhat like that of the fur seal. Unlike the other

## HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET

varieties, it frequents the fresh water, ascending rivers and being found in fresh water lakes of high elevation.

The *Polar Bear* is regarded in the animal world as the monarch of the Hudson Bay region. He is found almost as frequently in the water as upon the land, having a very wide range over which he roams throughout the year, following the general movements of the seals and other animals upon which he preys. The female polar bear resorts to the shelter of some friendly snowbank during the winter months, and there gives birth to her young in the month of March; but the males do not hibernate, preferring rather to take their chances of an occasional cold meal whilst roaming their solitary fields of ice and snow. I had occasion one winter to meet with Mr. Bruin when on his foraging rounds, but as I was armed with a good rifle, he furnished the meal, not I. Upon making an examination of the stomach of this bear, it was found to contain nothing but the droppings of reindeer. For miles he had followed the tracks of an Eskimo, but met with misfortune before overtaking his quarry.

The skin of the polar bear forms a beautiful and valuable robe, whilst the blubber affords a fine grade of oil, but the chief value of the animal is as a prize for the sportsman.

The *Reindeer*, or *Caribou*, of the Hudson Bay country is to-day what the buffalo was to the western plains thirty or forty years ago, the chief source of food to the natives; but as it has been described at considerable length in a former chapter of this book, no further mention of it need be made here.

The *Musk-ox* is one of the noblest and most valuable animals of the northern shores of Hudson Bay and adjacent territory. It is found in very considerable numbers and affords most luxurious robes. I have seen musk-ox robes stacked by the Eskimos like hay-cocks along the shore of Chesterfield Inlet, awaiting an opportunity to market them;



## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

but as I have also devoted a chapter to this species I shall not make further reference to them.

*Woodland Caribou*, *Moose* and *Jumping Deer* are found in more or less abundance throughout the timbered country about the southern parts of the bay; so also are *Black Bears*, *Wolves* and *Colored Foxes*. *Black* and *Red* as well as *White Foxes* are also commonly found in the country north of the timber line. I have seen several black foxes and about a thousand white ones trapped by a few Eskimos in Hudson Strait during one winter; and I have also seen and handled a single black foxskin which realized for its owner the sum of \$1,600.

Other fur-bearing animals which may be mentioned as products of the Hudson Bay country are, *Otter*, *Beaver*, *Fisher*, *Mink*, *Martin*, *Ermine*, *Wolverine*, *Lynx* and *Wild Cats*.

Little definite information seems to be available regarding the varieties and abundance of fish in Hudson Bay and Strait, but certain it is that some of the finest fish I have ever seen or eaten have come from those waters. From my own personal knowledge I can vouch for the following species:

*Salmon* of the very finest quality are found in abundance both in Hudson Bay and Strait. I have several times procured them from the Eskimos, and can testify as to their superior quality.

*Lake Trout* are found in all the streams and lakes tributary to the bay.

*Sturgeon* are plentiful in the Nelson and some other rivers flowing into the bay.

*Whitefish* are caught in the mouths of several of the rivers by the Hudson's Bay Company, and salted in barrels for export.

## HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET

Cod have been found at a number of points in the northern parts of the bay and strait, and in Ungava Bay of late years a most successful cod fishery has been carried on by Senator Blanchard, a progressive and wealthy Newfoundlander. The senator informed me that his newly established Ungava Bay fishery had exceeded his best expectations.

Doubtless other varieties of deep-water fish will be found when properly fished for, but as yet this has not been done, so far as I am aware.

Of feathered game there is a great abundance, particularly of waterfowl, the most important of which are *Brant*, *Hutchins* and *Snowy Geese*, *Northern*, *American* and *King Eiders*, *Squaw Ducks*, *Swans*, *Loons*, *Murres*, *Guillemots* and many other sea fowls. In many places I have seen geese in such numbers that they could be killed by hundreds with sticks. Ptarmigan, also, are found in great numbers in many places in the open country. They are commonly caught by the natives with nets, and form a staple article of food.

### II. Vegetable Products.

Under this heading, in the northern parts of the Hudson Bay territory, we can count upon nothing for export, although in the valleys of the Thelon and some other rivers there are valuable belts of spruce and tamarack timber for local supply when required. Nearly all of the southern part of the territory south of latitude 58 degrees is, however, more or less heavily wooded with *White* and *Black Spruce*, *Tamarack*, *Poplar*, *Birch*, *Pine*, *Balsam Cedar*, *Elm* and *Ash*, here given in order of their abundance.

Very large quantities of milling timber are found in the valleys of all the large rivers emptying into the southern shores of Hudson and James bays, whilst the available supply of pulpwood is almost unlimited.

Agricultural development is not to be expected anywhere

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

in the northern parts of the district, but throughout the more southerly wooded portions there are great possibilities in this direction. At Fort Churchill I have seen a few hardy garden vegetables grown for local use, but at York, 120 miles farther south, many varieties grow luxuriantly; and I believe that at Moose Factory and other southern points almost all kinds of farm produce have been raised successfully. Beyond a doubt, there are millions of acres of agricultural lands between the shores of the bay and the height of land to the south of it.

### III. Mineral Products.

Of these little can yet be said excepting as to prospects. Many valuable minerals have been sighted in various parts of the territory; but as yet no systematic prospecting has been undertaken, and with few exceptions, therefore, no reliable information is available as to qualities or quantities of minerals discovered.

*Iron Ores* are known to occur in several localities, notably along the east main coast and the adjoining islands on the west coast of Ungava Bay, also on the south shore of Hudson Strait and upon the Mattagami River.

*Galena* is known to exist in workable quantities at Richmond Gulf and Little Whale River, a few tons of ore having been mined near the Hudson's Bay Company's post at the latter place. Dr. Bell reports assays of two samples of this ore as yielding 5.104 and 12.03 ounces of silver to the ton.

*Gold* and *Silver* are also reported by Dr. Bell to have been found in small quantities upon the east main coast, near Great Whale River and Dog Island; also on the west coast south of Rankin Inlet, where a large area of the Huronian or Keewatin schists occurs. Again, both metals were discovered in small quantities in samples obtained by the Doctor from one of the most northerly of the Ottawa Islands.

## HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET

*Molybdenum* is reported to have been found upon the east main coast.

*Copper* has been discovered both on the east and the west coasts, though in unknown quantity.

*Lignite* is reported to have been discovered on the Missinaibi River, *Gypsum* on the Moose, and *Petroleum-bearing limestone* on the Abittibi.

Good qualities of *building stone* are available on both the east and west shores of the bay. Large quantities of soapstone occur at Mosquito Bay, on the east coast, and abundance of *Mica* has been discovered in Chesterfield Inlet, Eastmain and Lake Harbor, a mine being now profitably worked by a Scotch whaler at the latter place, not far from where I spent the winter of 1885-86. Mr. Low reports that in 1904 thirteen tons of excellent mica were taken from this mine.

*Graphite* has been found on the east shore of Ungava Bay, in White Strait, and near Cape Wolstenholme.

This concludes my brief outline of the resources of the Hudson Bay district; but I think the facts pointed out are sufficient to support in the very strongest manner any well-advised scheme to open up the territory either by rail or steamboat transportation, or both.

### NAVIGATION OF THE BAY AND STRAITS.

In dealing with this subject I am not unmindful that I am broaching one which has been under serious consideration and investigation for the past twenty-five years, so far without definite results; but as my opportunities for observing actual conditions have been large, I may be able to throw some additional light upon the question. Besides having carefully perused the various reports of those who have made a study of the question, I have personally made six voyages across the bay, and have passed four times

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

---

through the strait, and spent one winter in it upon Big Island.

I assume that the prime motive in opening up a route for commerce through Hudson Bay and Strait is already well understood, viz., to provide the best and the much-needed additional transportation facilities for the large and ever-increasing produce of Western Canada. As compared with present shipping routes to Europe, the distance from Fort Churchill to Liverpool is almost identical with that from Montreal to Liverpool by way of Cape Race, whilst the distance from a central point, such as Prince Albert, to Churchill is more than twelve hundred miles less than to Montreal. From Regina to Churchill the saving in rail travel would amount to over one thousand miles, and from Edmonton it would amount to more than eleven hundred. Surely the simple statement of these facts alone forms the strongest possible argument in favor of railway connection between Fort Churchill and the railway systems of the Western Provinces.

I mention Fort Churchill only as the terminal point, since it is beyond all question the most advantageous port on the west coast of the bay. No unusual difficulties would be met with in the construction of such a road, for during the summer of 1905 it was my privilege to explore a proposed route from Prince Albert to Churchill, and I found it entirely feasible. A year later several other explorers covered the same route in the interests of the Canadian Northern Railway, and they have also reported quite favorably upon the project. It remains for us, therefore, to consider only the feasibility of steamboat navigation on the bay and strait.

In this connection we will first consider the harbor question, and the length of season for which it is available. As shown by my map and contours thereon, Churchill harbor is an excellent one, possessing good anchorage in from four to nine fathoms of water at low tide, and the area at this depth

## HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET

may be greatly extended at small cost if more space is required.

From records of the Hudson's Bay Company, extending back for a great number of years, the average dates of the opening and closing of Churchill Harbor are the 19th of June and the 18th of November, making the length of open season exactly five months. The earliest recorded date of opening was the 5th of June, 1863, and the latest the 2nd of July, 1866. The earliest date of closing was the 1st of November, 1837, and the latest the 4th of December, 1885. These dates, of course, represent the times of the ice first running out and again setting fast—without any reference to the reappearance of drift-ice, from which source some trouble may be experienced during the early summer—but we may quite safely count upon the free and unobstructed use of Churchill Harbor for the four months of July, August, September and October.

I am of opinion that little difficulty would be experienced in keeping the harbor open during the greater part of November, and with the use of ice-breakers it could, if necessary, be kept open throughout the winter.

The strong tidal and river currents in the harbor are natural features which assist very materially in the breaking up and clearing out of the ice. Outside of the harbor a belt of shore-ice forms during the winter season, but beyond this the bay is never frozen, and may be freely navigated at all seasons of the year. Outside of the harbors, the only difficulties to navigation occur in Hudson Strait, where at three points the channel is contracted to forty or forty-five miles in width. The first of these points, counting from the west, is at the south of Nottingham Island, and here ice-jams are frequently met with during the early part of the summer and late in the fall; but by careful observation of the wind and tidal currents these obstructions may often be avoided by passing either to the north of Not-

## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

tingham or to the south of the Digges Islands, between which and the mainland at Cape Wolstenholme there is deep water. The prevailing direction of the movement of the ice at this locality is from the north, so that it frequently happens that though drift-ice may be hard ashore on the north side of Nottingham, there is open water to the south of it. The extreme sluggishness of the magnetic compass is also a source of difficulty to the mariner in this quarter, but the establishment of lights and bell-buoys would largely overcome this.

The next point where difficulties in navigation are likely to be encountered is about half way through the strait, at or south of Big Island. Here there is a strong prevailing set of current to the west along the north shore and to the east along the south shore, and these facts require to be carefully regarded by the navigator, as also the direction of the prevailing winds, which very largely control the position of any drifting ice that may be in those waters.

It is notable that during the systematic trking of observations on both sides of the strait in 1885-86, when "ice" was observed upon the one side "open water" was the rule upon the other, and *vice versa*. The most advantageous channel would therefore seem to be fairly central, inclining to the north or south, depending upon whether the wind is northerly or southerly.

The third point of contraction is at the eastern entrance to the strait, between Resolution and the Button islands, and to this locality the above observations regarding currents and wind apply with equal force.

We cannot get away from the fact that a considerable quantity of drifting field-ice is likely to be encountered in the strait throughout the month of July, and of course earlier; but by that time it is found to be so broken and softened by the action of the weather and water as to be of little danger to ships—which, with average steam power and

## HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET

suitably arranged propellers with attachable blades, will be able to force their way through.

As to the occurrence of fog in Hudson Strait, a comparison of carefully kept observations shows less than one-third the number of hours that are recorded in the Straits of Belle Isle.

As to icebergs, they are occasionally met with in Hudson Strait, being sometimes carried in along the north shore by the prevailing current from Davis Strait, but they are by no means of frequent occurrence, and not one-tenth as numerous as off the Straits of Belle Isle.

The strait can, in my opinion, be relied upon for unobstructed navigation from the 15th of July to the 1st of November, with a possible extension of two weeks at either end.

In looking through a volume of the *European Magazine and London Review* for the year 1797—one of the many rare old volumes in the Toronto Public Library—the writer was interested to notice, in a brief sketch of Fort Prince of Wales, in the June number of that year, the following reference to the navigation of Hudson Bay: "The ships employed in the trade pass the Straits the beginning of August and return in September. The navigation is very safe, not a ship being lost in twenty years. It is supposed that were the trade to be laid open, the exports thither might be exceedingly enlarged."

In conclusion, I would say that the proposition to open up a route for commerce through Hudson Bay and Strait is, in my opinion, a wise and perfectly feasible move, both because of the service it will render in developing the local resources of the country, and because of the additional transportation facilities it will afford for the products of Western Canada.

I am indebted to Mr. Charles Mair, of Lethbridge, our distinguished western poet, and author of the recently pub-



## ACROSS THE SUB-ARCTICS OF CANADA

lished and very interesting and valuable narrative of the Government Treaty Expedition of 1899 through the Peace and Athabasca river valleys,\* for permission to insert here his noble poem, "Open the Bay," an eloquent and effective protest against the efforts of certain affected interests to cultivate the idea that navigation of Hudson Strait is impracticable.

### OPEN THE BAY.

Open the Bay, which o'er the Northland broods,  
Dumb, yet in labor with a mighty fate!  
Open the Bay! Humanity intrudes,  
And gropes, prophetic, round its solitudes,  
In eager thought, and will no longer wait.

Open the Bay which Cabot first espied  
In days when tiny bark and pinnacle bore  
Stout pilots and brave captains true and tried—  
Those dauntless souls who battled far and wide,  
With wind and wave in the great days of yore.

Open the Bay which Hudson—doubly crowned  
By fame—to science and to history gave.  
This was his limit, this his utmost bound—  
Here, all unwittingly, he sailed and found,  
At once, a path of empire and a grave.

Open the Bay! What cared that seaman grim  
For towering iceberg or the crashing floe?  
He sped at noonday or at midnight dim,  
A man! and, hence, there was a way for him,  
And where he went a thousand ships can go.

Open the Bay! the myriad prairies call;  
Let homesteads rise and comforts multiply;  
Give to the world the shortest route of all,  
Let justice triumph though the heavens should fall!  
This is the voice of reason—manhood's cry.

\*"Through the Mackenzie Basin," William Briggs, Toronto. 1908.

## HUDSON BAY A NATIONAL ASSET

Open the Bay! Who are they that say "No"?  
Who locks the portals? Nature? She resigned  
Her icy reign, her stubborn frost and snow,  
Her sovereign sway and sceptre, long ago,  
To sturdy manhood and the master, Mind!

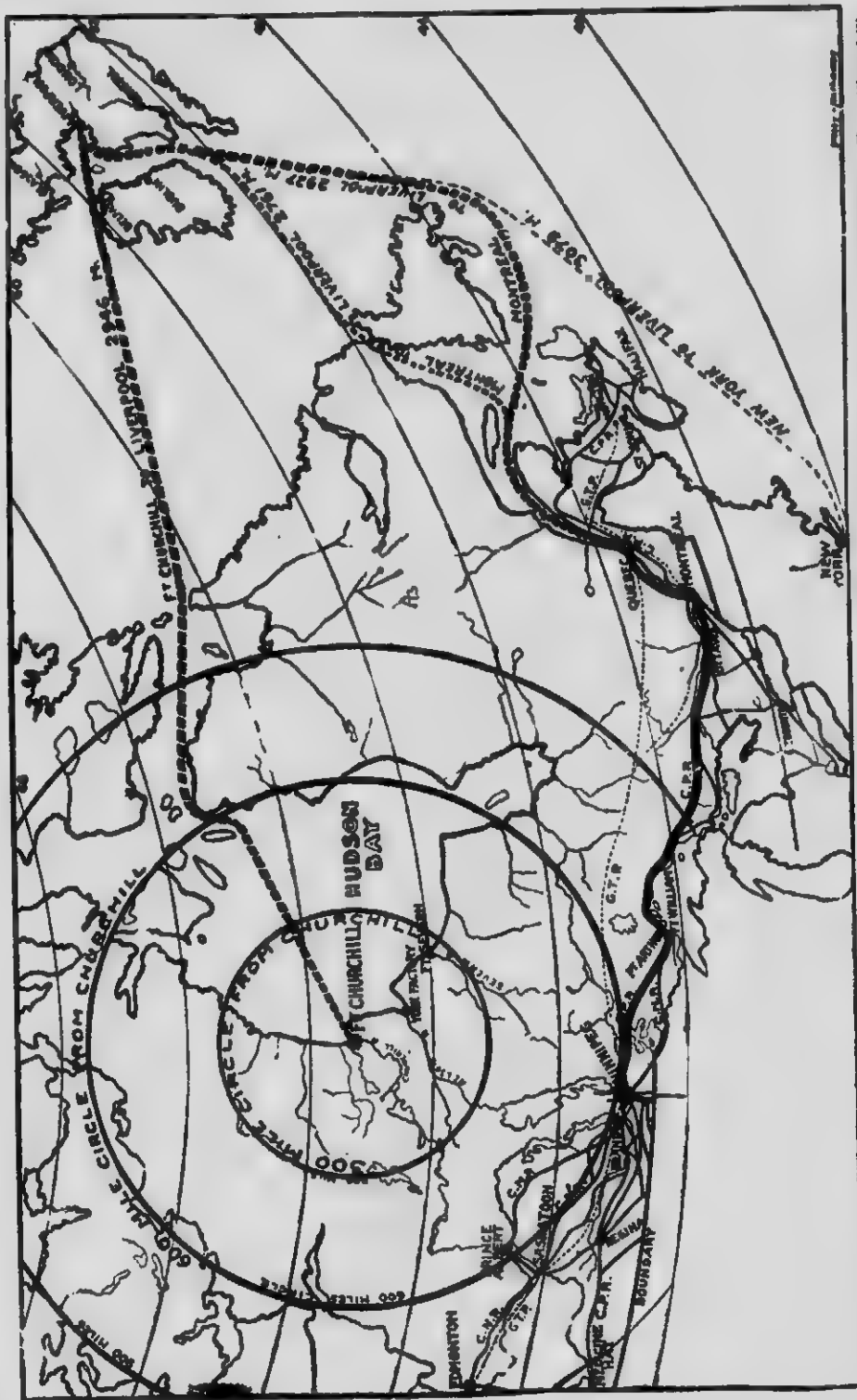
Not these the foe! Not Nature, who is fain  
When earnest hearts an earnest end pursue;  
But man's old selfishness and greed of gain.  
These ancient breeders of earth's sin and pain—  
These are the thieves who steal the Nation's due!

Such are the heirs of traders Gillam led—  
Such were they in the past, with souls obtuse  
When duty called—who, recreant, and dead  
To England's honor, hung the craven head,  
And struck the British flag to La Perouse.

And such are they who, in their Eastern place,  
Say, "It is folly and the purpose vain!"  
The carrier and the shallow huckster's race—  
Theirs are the hands, not Nature's which efface,  
And seal the public good for private gain.

Open the Bay! Let Earth's poor people in!  
What though the selfish interests lie and flout—  
Open the Inlet! Let them growl and grin,  
And Power still hobnob with them in their sin—  
Humanity, their master, is about!

It looks abroad, and with purged vision sees  
Man's wily nature bared, not overcast;  
It comes to scatter to the winds his pleas,  
His privilege and bland accessories,  
And with strong arm right the wronged land at last.



This map shows the strategical advantage of the Hudson Bay route from the wheat-fields of the "West" to the markets of Great Britain. Fort Churchill, it will be seen, is relatively in the same position to Liverpool as Montreal is, and over 100 miles nearer than New York. The 600-mile circle from Fort Churchill is just north of Winnipeg. Prince Albert is within the circle; Saskatoon, Regina and Brandon just without.  
—Reproduced by courtesy of "Canadian Life and Resources," Montreal.



THE CREE HUNTER'S PRIZE.



## APPENDIX I.

### CLASSIFIED LIST OF PLANTS

Collected by J. W. TYRELL, C.E., D.L.S.,

in 1893, along the line of route between Lake Athabasca and the west coast of Hudson Bay; with which is incorporated a small collection made in 1891 at Ashe Inlet, on the north shore of Hudson Strait, and a collection made by Miss Marjorie Lofthouse at Fort Churchill.

The species collected from the Barren Lands are marked B; those from the forest country south of the Barren Lands, or in isolated groves of timber on the banks of the river, north of the general limit of the forest, are marked W. Any species collected both from the woods and from the Barren Lands are marked W.B., or B.W., according to whether they are woodland species extending into the Barren Lands, or Arctic species extending south into the forest.

Determined by Professor John Macoun, M.A.

#### I. RANUNCULACEÆ.

1. *Anemone patens*, L., var. *Nuttalliana*, Gray.—W.  
Fort Chipewyan, Lake Athabasca, June 19.
2. *Anemone parviflora*, Michx.—W.B.  
North shore of Lake Athabasca. Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake, and the west shore of Hudson Bay at Fort Churchill.
3. *Anemone Richardsonii*, Hook.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
4. *Anemone multifida*, Poir.—W.  
Woodcock Portage, on Stone River.
5. *Ranunculus affinis*, R. Br.—B.  
Barlow Lake, Dubawnt River. Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes. South shore of Chesterfield Inlet, near its mouth. Fort Churchill.

## APPENDIX

6. *Ranunculus Lapponicus*, L.—B.

West shore of Dubawnt Lake, near the mouth of Dubawnt River.

7. *Ranunculus hyperboreus*, Rottb.—W.

Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.

### II. PAPAVERACEÆ.

8. *Papaver nudicaule*, L.—B.

Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes.  
This species was also collected at Ashe Inlet, on the north shore of Hudson Strait, in 1885.

### III. FUMARIACEÆ.

9. *Corydalis glauca*, Pursh.—W.

North-west and north shores of Lake Athabasca. Esker, near the Narrows of Daly Lake.

10. *Corydalis aurea*, Willd.—W.

Rocky Island, on the north side of Lake Athabasca, west of Fond du Lac.

### IV. CRUCIFERÆ.

11. *Cardamine pratensis*, L., var. *angustifolia*.—B.

Island near the centre of Boyd Lake. Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake. Fort Churchill.

12. *Arabis lyrata*, L.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca.

13. *Arabis humifusa*, var. *pubescens*, Wat.—W.

North-west angle of Lake Athabasca. Esker, near the Narrows of Daly Lake.

This species had not previously been found west of Hudson Bay.

14. *Barbarea vulgaris*, R. Br.—W.

Cracking Stone Point, north shore of Lake Athabasca. Red Hill, on the west shore of Hinde Lake.

15. *Sisymbrium humile*, C. A. Meyer.—W.

Fort Chipewyan, Lake Athabasca.

## APPENDIX

16. *Cerastium digitata*, Rich.—B.

Loudon Rapids, above forks of Dubawnt River. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.

Not found elsewhere since it was collected by Sir John Richardson near the mouth of the Coppermine River.

17. *Draba hirta*, L.—B.

Limestone Island, Nicholson Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. Also at Ashe Inlet, on the north shore of Hudson Strait.

18. *Draba incana*, L.—B.

Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. Fort Churchill, on the west coast of Hudson Bay.

19. *Draba nemorosa*, L., var. *leiocarpa*, Lindb.—W.  
Fond du Lac, Lake Athabasca.

20. *Draba stellata*, Jacq.—B.

North-west shore of Dubawnt Lake.

21. *Cochlearia officinalis*, L.—B.

Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.

22. *Eutrema Edwardsii*, R. Br.—B.

North-west shore of Dubawnt Lake.

23. *Nasturtium palustre*, D. C.—W.

Fond du Lac, Lake Athabasca.

### V. VIOLACEÆ.

24. *Viola palustris*, L.—W.

East and north shores of Carey Lake.

These are the most northern localities in Canada where this species has been found.

25. *Viola canina*, L., var. *Sylvestris*, Regel.—W.

Fond du Lac, Lake Athabasca. South end of Daly Lake.

### VI. CARYOPHYLLACEÆ.

26. *Silene acaulis*, L.—B.

Dubawnt Lake, west shore. North end of Wharton Lake. Also at Ashe Inlet, on Hudson Strait.



## APPENDIX

27. *Lychnis apetala*, L.—B.

Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.

28. *Lychnis affinis*, Vahl.—B.

Dubawnt Lake, north-west shore.

29. *Arenaria lateriflora*, L.—W.

Near the south end of Daly Lake.

30. *Arenaria peplodes*, L.—B.

Ashe Inlet, on the north side of Hudson Strait.

31. *Stellaria longipes*, Goldie.—B. W.

Barlow Lake. Carey Lake. Wharton Lake, Dubawnt Lake, west shore. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. Fort Churchill.

32. *Stellaria longipes*, Goldie, var. *lata*, Wats.—B.

Barlow Lake and Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake.

33. *Stellaria borealis*, Bigel.—W.

Red Hill, on the west shore of Hinde Lake.

34. *Cerastium alpinum*, L.—B.

Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake. Wharton Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet. Fort Churchill. Ashe Inlet, on the north shore of Hudson Strait.

### VII. GERANIACEÆ.

35. *Geranium Carolinianum*, L.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca, a short distance west of Fond du Lac.

### VIII. SAPINDACEÆ.

36. *Acer spicatum*, Lam.—W.

Fort Chipewyan, Lake Athabasca.

This is the most northerly locality in Canada from which this species has been recorded.

## APPENDIX

### IX. LEGUMINOSÆ.

37. *Astragalus alpinus*, L.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca at Fond du Lac, and near Big Fowl Island. Esker, near the Narrows of Daly Lake.

38. *Spiesia (Oxytropis) Belli*, Britt.—B.

Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.

The only other locality from which this species has been collected is Digges Island, Hudson Bay, where it was found by Dr. Bell in 1884. It was described by Mr. Britton in 1894 from the specimens collected at the second and third of the above localities.

39. *Oxytropis campestris*, L., var. *cærulea*, Koch.—B.

Ashe Inlet, on the north shore of Hudson Strait.

40. *Oxytropis leucantha*, Pers.—B.

Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet. Fort Churchill.

41. *Hedysarum boreale*, Nutt.—B.

Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.

42. *Hedysarum Mackenzii*, Richard, L.—B. W.

Fort Churchill. Ashe Inlet, on the north shore of Hudson Strait.

### X. ROSACEÆ.

43. *Prunus Pennsylvanica*, L.—W.

North-west angle of Lake Athabasca. Esker, near Narrows of Daly Lake.

44. *Rubus chamæmorus*, L.—W. B.

Fort Churchill. Common in swampy places from Lake Athabasca northward to the edge of the woods. Grove on the north shore of Carey Lake, and at Loudon Rapids, near the forks of Dubawnt River. It was also found at Ashe Inlet, on the north shore of Hudson Strait.

45. *Rubus arcticus*, L., var. *grandiflorus*, Leheb.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca. Barlow Lake. North shore of Carey Lake. Fort Churchill.

## APPENDIX

46. *Rubus strigosus*, Michx.—W.

Banks of Stone River. In an isolated grove of white spruce on the north shore of Carey Lake.

The last-mentioned would seem to have been an isolated locality, at some considerable distance north of its general northern limit.

47. *Dryas integrifolia*, Vahl.—B.

Carey Lake. Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake. West shore of Dubawnt Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. Fort Churchill. Ashe Inlet, on the north shore of Hudson Strait.

48. *Fragaria Canadensis*, Michx.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca and Woodcock Portage, on Stone River.

This species, which has usually been confounded with *F. Virginiana*, was also collected in the same year by Miss Taylor at Fort Smith, on Slave River.

49. *Potentilla Norvegica*, L.—W.

Woodcock Portage, on Stone River. Red Hill, on the west shore of Hinde Lake.

50. *Potentilla nivea*, L.—B.

Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet. Fort Churchill.

51. *Potentilla palustris*, Scop.—W.

Stony flats on the banks of Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.

52. *Potentilla fruticosa*, L.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca, a little distance west of Fond du Lac.

53. *Potentilla nana*, Willd.—B.

Shore of Hudson Bay, north of Marble Island. Ashe Inlet, on the north shore of Hudson Strait.

54. *Potentilla tridentata*, Solander.—W.

Woodcock Portage, Stone River.

55. *Amelanchier alnifolia*, Nutt.—W.

North-west angle, Lake Athabasca.

## APPENDIX

### XI. SAXIFRAGACEÆ.

56. *Saxifraga oppositifolia*, L.—B.  
Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes. Mouth of  
Chesterfield Inlet. Ashe Inlet, on the north shore of Hudson  
Strait.
57. *Saxifraga cespitosa*, L.—B.  
Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes. Mouth of  
Chesterfield Inlet. Ashe Inlet.
58. *Saxifraga rivularis*, L.—B.  
Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. Ashe Inlet.
59. *Saxifraga cernua*, L.—B.  
North-west shore of Dubawnt Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the  
forks of Dubawnt River. Dubawnt River, between Schultz  
and Baker lakes. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet. Fort Churchill.
60. *Saxifraga nivalis*, L.—B.  
Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.
61. *Saxifraga hieracifolia*, Waldst and Kit.—B.  
North shore of Dubawnt Lake.
62. *Saxifraga punctata*, L.—B.  
North-west shore of Dubawnt Lake.  
This species had not previously been recorded east of the  
Rocky Mountains.
63. *Saxifraga Hirculus*, L.—B.  
North-west shore of Dubawnt Lake.
64. *Saxifraga tricuspidata*, Retz.—B. W.  
Fort Chipewyan, Lake Athabasca. North shore of Carey  
Lake. Wharton Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of  
Dubawnt River. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet. Ashe Inlet.
65. *Chrysosplenium alternifolium*, L.—B.  
Limestone Island, Nicholson Lake.
66. *Parnassia Kotzebuei*, Cham. and Schl.—W.  
South end of Daly Lake.
67. *Parnassia palustris*, L.—W.  
Fort Churchill.

## APPENDIX

---

68. *Ribes oxycanthoides*, L.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca, near Fond du Lac.

69. *Ribes rubrum*, L.—W.

Fort Chipewyan, Lake Athabasca.

70. *Ribes Hudsonianum*, Richards.—W.

Fort Chipewyan, Lake Athabasca.

71. *Ribes prostratum*, L'Her.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca. Esker, near the Narrows of Daly Lake. East and north shores of Carey Lake.

### XII. HALORACEÆ.

72. *Hippuris vulgaris*, L.—B.

Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.

73. *Hippuris maritima*, L.—B. W.

Red Hill, on the shore of Hinde Lake. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.

### XIII. ONAGRACEÆ.

74. *Epilobium angustifolium*, L.—W. B.

Esker, near the Narrows of Daly Lake. Ashe Inlet, Hudson Strait.

These localities probably mark the northern range of this species.

75. *Epilobium latifolium*, L.—B.

West shore of Dubawnt Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River, where the flowers were just appearing on August 25. Fort Churchill. Ashe Inlet.

76. *Epilobium lineare*, Gray.—B.

Red Hill, on the shore of Hinde Lake. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.

### XIV. CORNACEÆ.

77. *Cornus Canadensis*, L.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca. South end of Daly Lake.

## APPENDIX

### XV. CAPRIFOLIACEÆ.

78. *Viburnum pauciflorum*, Pylaie.—W.  
North shore of Lake Athabasca. Esker, near the Narrows of  
Daly Lake.
79. *Linnaea borealis*, Gronov.—W.  
Elizabeth Rapids, Stone River. Esker, near the Narrows of  
Daly Lake. North shore of Carey Lake. Fort Churchill.

### XVI. RUBIACEÆ.

80. *Gallium trifidum*, L.—W.  
Red Hill, on the shore of Hinde Lake.

### XVII. COMPOSITÆ.

81. *Erigeron uniflorus*, L.—B.  
Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.
82. *Erigeron eriocephalus*, J. Vahl.—B.  
North end of Wharton Lake.
83. *Antennaria alpina*, Gærtn.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake.
84. *Achillea millefolium*, L., var. *nigrescens*, L.—W. B.  
Woodcock Portage, Stone River. Fort Churchill. Ashe Inlet.
85. *Matricaria inodora*, L., var. *nana*, Hook.—W.  
Fort Churchill.
86. *Artemisia borealis*, Pall., var. *Wormsktoldii*, Bess.—B. W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake, and east end of  
Aberdeen Lake.
87. *Petasites palmata*, Gray.—W.  
Fond du Lac, Lake Athabasca.
88. *Petasites sagittata*, Gray.—B.  
Limestone Island, Nicholson Lake. Ashe Inlet, Hudson Strait.

## APPENDIX

89. *Arnica alpina*, Olin.—B. W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca. Esker, near Narrows of Daly Lake. West shore of Dubawnt Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. Fort Churchill. Ashe Inlet.

90. *Senecio palustris*, Hook., var. *congesta*, Hook.—B.

West shore of Dubawnt Lake. Fort Churchill. Ashe Inlet.

91. *Senecio aureus*, L., var. *borealis*, Tor. and Gr.—B.

Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake.

92. *Senecio aureus*, L., var. *balsamita*, Tor. and Gr.—W.

Fort Churchill.

93. *Saussurea alpina*, Hook.—B.

North end of Wharton Lake.

94. *Taraxacum officinale*, Weber, var. *alpinum*, Koch.—B.

Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet. Fort Churchill.

### XVIII. CAMPANULACEÆ.

95. *Campanula uniflora*, L.—B.

Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.

### XIX. VACCINIACEÆ.

96. *Vaccinium Canadense*, Kalm.—W.

South end of Daly Lake.

97. *Vaccinium uliginosum*, L.—W. B.

North shore of Lake Athabasca. Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake. Carey Lake. Dubawnt Lake. Loudon Rapids, above forks of Dubawnt River. Fort Churchill.

98. *Vaccinium Vitis-Idææ*, L.—W. B.

North shore of Lake Athabasca. Daly Lake. Dubawnt Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. Fort Churchill.

While both this and the preceding species extend for a considerable distance into the Barren Lands, the bushes are small and bear very little fruit.

## APPENDIX

99. *Oxycoccus vulgaris*, Pursh.—W.

Esker, near the middle of Daly Lake, and stony banks of Dubawnt River, just below the lake.

### XX. ERICACEÆ.

100. *Arctostaphylos alpina*, Spreng.—B. W.

Island near the middle of Boyd Lake. Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet. Fort Churchill. Ashe Inlet, Hudson Strait.

In 1904 the most southern locality at which this species was observed was on the hill south of Kasba Lake. In 1896 it was seen in the swamp at Cross Portage, north of Seeptiwisk Lake. In 1896, Nelson River.—J. B. T.

101. *Arctostaphylos Uva-ursi*, Spreng.—W.

North to the edge of Barren Lands.

102. *Cassandra calyculata*, Don.—W.

North-west shore, Lake Athabasca. South end of Selwyn Lake.

103. *Cassiope tetragona*, Don.—B.

Shores of Dubawnt Lake. Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.

This is one of the plants most commonly used for fuel by those travelling in the Barren Lands.

104. *Andromeda polifolia*, L.—W. B.

North shore of Athabasca Lake. South end of Selwyn Lake. Esker, near the middle of Daly Lake. West shore of Dubawnt Lake. Fort Churchill.

105. *Loiseleuria procumbens*, Desf.—B.

Boyd Lake.

106. *Bryanthus taxifolius*, Gray.—B.

Loudon Rapids, above forks of Dubawnt River.

107. *Kalmia glauca*, Ait.—W.

Fond du Lac, Lake Athabasca. Esker, near middle of Daly Lake.

108. *Ledum latifolium*, Ait.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca. Daly Lake.  
Farther north it is replaced by the next following species.



## APPENDIX

109. *Ledum palustre*, L.—B. W.

South end of Daly Lake. Carey Lake. Shores of Dubawnt Lake. Wharton Lake. Loudon Rapids, above forks of Dubawnt River. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet. Fort Churchill.

110. *Rhodendron Lapponicum*, Wahl.—B.

Limestone Island, Nicholson Lake. Shores of Dubawnt Lake. Fort Churchill.

111. *Pyrola minor*, L.—W.

Red Hill, on the shore of Hinde Lake.

112. *Pyrola secunda*, L., var. *pumila*, Gray.—W. B.

North shore of Carey Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.

This is the most northerly point at which this species was observed.

113. *Pyrola rotundifolia*, L., var. *pumila*, Hook.—B. W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca. Carey Lake. Wharton Lake. Loudon Rapids, on Dubawnt River. Fort Churchill. Ashe Inlet.

### XXI. PLUMBAGINACEÆ.

114. *Armeria vulgaris*, Willd.—B.

West shore of Dubawnt Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.

### XXII. PRIMULACEÆ.

115. *Primula Mistassinica*, Michx.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca. Fort Churchill.

116. *Trientalis Americana*, Pursh.—W.

Elizabeth Falls, Stone River.

117. *Androsace septentrionalis*, L.—W.

Fort Churchill.

### XXIII. GENTIANACEÆ.

118. *Menyanthes trifoliata*, L.—W.

Woodcock Portage, Stone River.

## APPENDIX

### XXIV. HYDROPHYLLACEÆ.

119. *Phacelia Franklinii*, Gray.—W.  
North shore of Lake Athabasca. Woodcock Portage, on Stone River.

### XXV. SCROPHULARIACEÆ.

120. *Castilleja pallida*, Kunth.—B.  
Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake. Shore of Dubawnt Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.
121. *Pedicularis Lapponica*, L.—B.  
Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet. Ashe Inlet, on Hudson Strait.
122. *Pedicularis euphrasioides*, Stephan.—B. W.  
Esker, near the middle of Daly Lake. North shore of Carey Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. Fort Churchill.
123. *Pedicularis hirsuta*, L.—B.  
Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake. West shore of Dubawnt Lake. Loudon Rapids.
124. *Pedicularis flammea*.—B.  
Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake.
125. *Pedicularis capitata*, Adams.—B.  
East shore of Carey Lake.
126. *Bartsia alpina*, L.—W.  
Fort Churchill.

### XXVI. LENTIBULARIACEÆ.

127. *Pinguicula villosa*, L.—W.  
Daly Lake. Boyd Lake.
128. *Pinguicula vulgaris*, L.—W.  
Carey Lake. Fort Churchill.

## APPENDIX

### XXVII. POLYGONACEÆ.

129. *Polygonum viviparum*, L.—B.

Limestone Island, in Nichols Lake. West shore of Dubawnt Lake. Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River. These are among the most northerly localities at which these species have been found in Canada.

130. *Oxyria digyna*, Campdera.—B.

Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.  
Ashe Inlet, on the north shore of Hudson Strait.

### XXVIII. MYRICACEÆ.

131. *Myrica Gale*, L.—W.

North-west angle of Lake Athabasca.

### XXIX. CUPULIFERÆ.

132. *Betula papyrifera*, Michx.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca.  
Daly Lake.

The Indians make their canoes from the bark of this tree. Trees sufficiently large for canoes were seen as far north as the north end of Selwyn Lake and the northern bend of Cochrane River. From these places northward it gradually decreases in size, until it disappears at about the northern limit of the forest.

133. *Betula pumila*, L.

Red Hill, on the west shore of Hinde Lake.  
Boyd Lake.

134. *Betula glandulosa*, Michx.

Daly Lake.  
Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.  
Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes.  
Fairly common, is a small shrub on the Barren Lands as far north as Ferguson River.—J. B. T.

135. *Alnus viridis*, D.C.—W.

Carey Lake. Quartzite Lake, on Ferguson River.

## APPENDIX

### XXX. SALICACEÆ.

136. *Salix petiolaris*, Smith.—W.  
North-west shore, Lake Athabasca.
137. *Salix desertorum*.—W.  
North shore of Lake Athabasca.
138. *Salix Brownii*, Bebb.—W. B.  
North shore of Lake Athabasca.  
North-west shore of Dubawnt Lake,  
Ashe Inlet, Hudson Straits.
139. *Salix Richardsonii*, Hook.—B.  
Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.  
Not previously recorded from the vicinity of Hudson Bay.
140. *Salix reticulata*, L.—B.  
Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake.  
Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.
141. *Salix herbacea*, L.—W. B.  
Esker, near the middle of Daly Lake.  
Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.  
Ashe Inlet, on the north side of Hudson Straits.
142. *Salix rostrata*, Rich.—W.  
North shore of Lake Athabasca.  
Elizabeth Rapids, Stone River.
143. *Salix speciosa*, Hook. and Arn.—B.  
Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.
144. *Salix glauca*, L., var. *villosa*, And.—B.  
Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes.
145. *Salix phyllifolia*, L.—B.  
Shore of Dubawnt Lake.  
Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes.  
Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.
146. *Salix balsamifera*, Barratt.—W.  
West shore of Daly Lake.  
This species was not before known to occur north of the  
Saskatchewan River.

## APPENDIX

147. *Populus balsamifera*, L.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca.

Limbs, believed to be of this species, were found lying on the sand at the forks of the Dubawnt River, having drifted down the West Branch to that place.

148. *Populus tremuloides*, Michx.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca.

Esker, near the narrows of Daly Lake.

The latter locality is the northern limit of the tree in this longitude. On the head-waters of the Thlewiaza River it was found to range as far north as latitude 60°. A few small trees were also observed on the raised beaches near Fort Churchill.—J. B. T.

### XXXI. EMPETRACEÆ.

149. *Empetrum nigrum*, L.—W. B.

Daly Lake.

Hinde Lake.

Carey Lake.

Loudon Rapids, on Dubawnt River.

Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.

Ashe Inlet, on Hudson Strait.

Very little fruit was found on the bushes north of the edge of the Barren Lands.

### XXXII. CONIFERÆ.

150. *Juniperus communis*, L.—W.

Fort Chipewyan, Lake Athabasca.

Esker, near the middle of Daly Lake.

North shore of Carey Lake.

151. *Juniperus Sabina*, L., var. *procumbens*, Pursh.—W.

Fort Chipewyan, Lake Athabasca.

152. *Pinus Banksiana*, Lambert.—W.

On dry sandy or rocky slopes as far north as the north end of Selwyn Lake.

## APPENDIX

153. *Picea nigra*, Link.—W. B.

North shore of Lake Athabasca.

Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.

This species occurs in scattered groves down the Dubawnt River to Dubawnt Lake. On the shore of Hudson Bay it reaches its northern limit at the mouth of Nelson River. The most northern examples are spreading shrubs in the middle of which may be found a small upright stem four or five feet high.—J. B. T.

154. *Picea alba*, Link.—W. B.

North shore of Lake Athabasca.

The sandy eskers near Hinde and Boyd lakes were thinly covered with fine large trees of this species. Groves of large trees were also growing on the wet but well drained flats or slopes beside the Dubawnt River down to within a short distance of Dubawnt Lake. Many large drifted trunks were also found at the forks below this lake. Its northern limit on the shore of Hudson Bay is at Little Seal River, north of Fort Churchill, where it replaces the preceding species in the wet swamps near the shore.—J. B. T.

155. *Larix Americana*, Michx.—W. B.

Dubawnt River, as far north as Dubawnt Lake.

On the shore of Hudson Bay as far north as the mouth of Little Seal River, associated with white spruce.—J. B. T.

### XXXIII. LILIACEÆ.

156. *Smilacina trifolia*, Desf.—W.

Esker, near middle of Daly Lake.

157. *Maianthemum Canadense*, Desf.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca.

158. *Allium Schanoprasum*, L.—W.

North shore of Lake Athabasca.

159. *Tofieldia borealis*, Wahl.—W. B.

Barlow Lake.

Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.  
Fort Churchill.

## APPENDIX

### XXXIV. ORCHIDACEÆ.

160. *Orchis rotundifolia*, Pursh.—W.  
Fort Churchill.

### XXXV. JUNCACEÆ.

161. *Luzula spadicea*, D.C., var. *melanocarpa*, Meyer.—B.  
Island near the middle of Boyd Lake.
162. *Luzula campestris*, Desf.—B.  
Island near the middle of Boyd Lake.
163. *Luzula campestris*, Desf., var. *vulgaris*, Hook.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake.

### XXXVI. CYPERACEÆ.

164. *Scirpus cespitosus*, L.—B.  
Island near the middle of Boyd Lake.
165. *Eriophorum polystachyon*, L.—W. B.  
West shore of Hinde Lake.  
Island near the middle of Boyd Lake.  
Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake.  
Ashe Inlet, on Hudson Strait.
166. *Eriophorum vaginatum*,—W. B.  
Esker near the middle of Daly Lake.
167. *Eriophorum capitatum*, Host.—B.  
Ashe Inlet, on Hudson Strait.
168. *Carex rariflora*, Smith,—B.  
Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.
169. *Carex canescens*, L., var. *alpicola*, Wahl.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.  
Boyd Lake.
170. *Carex misandra*, R. Br.—W. B.  
West shore of Hinde Lake.  
Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.

## APPENDIX

171. *Carex aquatilis*, Wahl.—W.  
West shore of Hinde Lake.
172. *Carex vulgaris*, Fries., var. *hyperborea* Boott.—W.  
Daly Lake. Hinde Lake.  
Boyd Lake.
173. *Carex Magellanica*, Lam.—W.  
Esker, near the middle of Daly Lake.
174. *Carex saxatilis*, L.—W.  
Hinde Lake. Barlow Lake.
175. *Carex rotundata*, Wahl.—B.  
Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.

## XXXVII. GRAMINEÆ.

176. *Hierochloa alpina*, R. & S.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake.  
Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.  
Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.
177. *Arctagrostis latifolia*, Griseb.—W. B.  
West shore of Hinde Lake.  
Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.
178. *Arctophila Laestadii*, Rupt.—W.  
West shore of Hinde Lake.
179. *Elymus arenarius*, L.—W.  
Black Lake, on Stone River.
180. *Elymus mollis*, Trin.—B.  
Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker lakes.  
Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.
181. *Calamagrostis Langsdorffii*, Kunth.—W.  
Black Lake on Stone River.  
Esker, near the middle of Daly Lake.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.



## APPENDIX

182. *Calamagrostis Canadensis*, Hook.—B.  
Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake.
183. *Poa alpina*, L.—B.  
Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.
184. *Poa angustata*, R. Br.—B.  
Boyd Lake.
185. *Poa cenista*, All.—B.  
Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake.  
Loudon Rapids, above the forks of Dubawnt River.
- 186 *Trisetum subspicatum*, Beauv.—W.  
Esker, near the middle of Daly Lake.

### XXXVIII. EQUISETACEÆ.

187. *Equisetum Sylvaticum*, L.—W.  
Esker, near the middle of Daly Lake.

### XL. FILICES.

188. *Polypodium vulgare*, L.—W.  
North shore of Lake Athabasca.
189. *Phegopteris Dryopteris*, Fee.—B.  
Island near the middle of Boyd Lake.
190. *Aspidium fragrans*, Swartz.—W. B.  
Daly Lake. Carey Lake.  
Dubawnt River, between Schultz and Baker Lakes.  
Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.
191. *Cystopteris fragilis*, Bernh.—B.  
Limestone Island, in Nicholson Lake.  
Mouth of Chesterfield Inlet.
192. *Woodsia ilvensis*, R. B.—W.  
North shore of Lake Athabasca.  
Grove of white spruce on the north shore of Carey Lake.

## APPENDIX

### XLI. LYCOPODIACEÆ.

193. *Lycopodium annotinum*, L.—W.  
Cracking Stone Point, Lake Athabasca.  
North shore of Carey Lake.
194. *Lycopodium annotinum*, L., var. *alpestre*, Hartm.—W.  
Dubawnt River, below Daly Lake.
195. *Lycopodium complanatum*, L.—W.  
West shore of Hinde Lake.
196. *Lycopodium Selago*, L.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake.  
Ashe Inlet, on Hudson Strait.

### XLII. MUSCI.

197. *Sphagnum fuscum*, var. *pallescent*, Warnst.—W.  
In swamp on the banks of Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
198. *Sphagnum tenellum*, var. *rubellum*, Warnst.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
199. *Sphagnum acutifolium*, Russ & Warnst.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
200. *Dicranum elongatum*, Schwaegr.—W.  
North end of Barlow Lake.
201. *Dicranum congestum*, Bird.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake, at the mouth of Dubawnt River.
202. *Dicranum fuscescens*, Turn.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake, at the mouth of Dubawnt River.
203. *Dicranum Bergeri*, Bland.—W.  
West shore of Hinde Lake.
204. *Aulacomium palustre*, Schwaegr.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake, at the mouth of Dubawnt River  
Ashe Inlet, on Hudson Strait.

## APPENDIX

205. *Polytrichum strictum*, Banks.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake, at the mouth of Dubawnt River.
206. *Webera nutans*, Hedw.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake, at the mouth of Dubawnt River.  
Ashe Inlet, on Hudson Strait.
207. *Hypnum exannulatum*, Guemb.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake, at the mouth of Dubawnt River.
208. *Hylocomium Schreberi*, Willd.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
209. *Hylocomium splendens*, Schimp River.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake, at the mouth of Dubawnt River.

### XLIII. HEPATICÆ.

210. *Ptilidium ciliare*, Dum.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake.

### XLIV. LICHENES.

211. *Cetraria aculeata*, Fr.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake.
212. *Cetraria artica*, Hook.—B.  
River bank between Nicholson and Dubawnt lakes.
213. *Cetraria Islandica*, Ach.—W. B.  
Daly Lake. Hill at the north end of Barlow Lake.
214. *Cetraria Islandica*, Ach., var. *Delisei*, Bor.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
215. *Cetraria Richardsonii*, Hook.—B.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake.
216. *Cetraria cucullata*, Ach.—B.  
North-west angle of Dubawnt Lake.

## APPENDIX

217. *Cetraria juniperina*, Ach., var. *Pinastii*, Ach.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
218. *Cetraria nivalis*, Ach.—W. B.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.  
North end of Barlow Lake.  
Ashe Inlet, on Hudson Strait.
219. *Alectoria jubata*, L., var. *implexa*, Fr.—W.  
West shore of Hinde Lake.
220. *Alectoria divergens*, Nyl.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
221. *Alectoria ochroleuca*, Nyl., var. (a) *rigida*, Fr.—B.  
North end of Barlow Lake.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake.
222. *Parmelia physodes*, Ach.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
223. *Parmelia conspersa*, Ach.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
224. *Umbilicaria Muhlenbergii*, Tuckerm.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
225. *Nephroma arcticum*, Fr.—W.  
West shore of Hinde Lake.
226. *Lecanora tartarea*, Ach.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
227. *Stereocaulon Despreauxii*, Nyl.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
228. *Cladonia decorticata*, Floerk.—W.  
North end of Barlow Lake.
229. *Cladonia gracilis*, Fr., var. *elongata*, Fr.—W. B.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.  
West shore of Dubawnt Lake.

## APPENDIX

230. *Cladonia rangiferina*, Hoffm.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.  
North shore of Barlow Lake.
231. *Cladonia rangiferina*, Hoffm., var. *sylvatica*, L.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
232. *Cladonia cornucopioides*, Fr.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.
233. *Bomyces aeruginosus*, D.C.—W.  
Dubawnt River, just below Daly Lake.



CARRYING THE MAIL TO MOOSE FACTORY.

## APPENDIX II.

### ESKIMO VOCABULARY OF WORDS AND PHRASES.

(ORIGINAL.)

All .....	Ter-mok-er-mingk.	Black Moss .....	Kee-now-yak.
All night .....	Knee-en-nah.	Cap .....	Nich-shaw.
Always .....	E-luk-o-she-a.	Cap (for gun) .....	Shre-neck-tow.
Alone .....	In-nu-tu-ak.	Child .....	Noo-ta-an.
A game .....	Nu-glee-ta.	Cod-fish .....	Oo-wat.
A herd .....	Ah-mik-took-too.	Come here .....	Ki-yert.
Another .....	Hi-punga.	Cold .....	Iek-kee.
All gone .....	I et-a-hung-e-too.	Coal .....	Kee-youk-cha.
Angry .....	Mac-ne-an-nah.	Clouds .....	No-boo yah.
Afraid .....	Kay-pe-en-nah.	Clothing .....	An-no-wak.
A while ago .....	Tat-el-e munny.	Canoe .....	Kyack.
Ark .....	O-kow te-vah-vor.	Coat .....	Koo-lee-ta.
Antlers .....	Nug-le yow.		
Arm .....	Tel-oo.	Day .....	Ood loo me.
Arrow .....	Kok-yoke.	Day before yes-	
All right .....	Co-id-na.	terday .....	Iek-puck sha nee.
Are you sleepy? .....	Chin-e-gin?	Dark .....	Ta-koo-nee.
Autumn .....	Mow-yah.	Deer .....	Took-too.
Axe .....	Ooley-moon.	Deer sinew .....	Took-too Ih a-loo.
		Dead .....	Tuck-o-boo.
Bad .....	Pee-ung-e to.	Down .....	Town-na-ney.
Bald .....	Ked-juk-yow.	Dog .....	King me.
Barren Lands .....	Nappartu-itok.	Don't want to .....	Uggome.
Bear .....	Nah-nook.	Don't lie .....	Shag lo-naw-me.
Big .....	Ung-a-yow-aloo.	Don't under-	
Brother (big) .....	Ung-a-yowk-a-	stand .....	Cow-you-mung-a-to.
	loong-a.	Don't know .....	Ah chew.
Brother (small) .....	Nung-a-yowk-a-	Do you wish to	
	loong-a.	go out? .....	Annie-low?
Black lead .....	Ming-oon-nah.	Die .....	Tuck o-boo.
Boot .....	Kamming.	Drink (give me) .....	Eumie ray.
Black .....	Kunnietah.	Duck .....	Me-ah-tuck.
Bring .....	I ehuc-to.		
Bullet .....	Uchie.	Ear .....	See-yow tee.
Bow .....	Pet e-chee.	East .....	Ka ming-nah.
Blood .....	Owk.	Early .....	Oo-blah.
Bones .....	Sow-ner.	Eat .....	Tun-wah-wa.
Blubber .....	Owk-zook.	Egg .....	Mun-nee.
Beard .....	Oo-mik.	Empty .....	E-mah-ik-took.
Beads .....	Shoong-ow-yoh.	End for end .....	Ig-loo-ah-nee.
Blankets .....	Kep-ig.	Eye .....	Egee.
Bite .....	Kee-wah.	Ermine .....	Ter-re-ak.
Big River .....	Koog-oark.		

# APPENDIX

Enough . . . . . Ta-bah.

Far away . . . . . Wash-ig-too-aloo.

Fat . . . . . Owk-shaw.

Farewell . . . . . Ta-bow-e-tee.

Faster . . . . . Ook-shoot.

Father . . . . . At-at-a.

Father (my) . . . . . At-at-a-ga.

Female . . . . . Ungna.

Fire . . . . . Iek-o-ma.

Fish . . . . . Iek-kal-luck.

Fox . . . . . Tar-hed-ne-ah.

Fur . . . . . Mit-kote.

Game (deer, etc.) O-ko-ko.

Go . . . . . Owd-luck-too.

Give me . . . . . Kidj-you.

Gone . . . . . Pete-hung-e-too.

Good . . . . . Pee-a-uke.

Glad (I am) . . . . . Pee-a-wee-unga.

Glove . . . . . Po-a-low.

Glad (it will  
make me) . . . . . Pee-a-yow-appy.

Good morning . . . . . Ah-shu-id-lee.

Good-bye . . . . . Ta-bow-a-ting.

Gun . . . . . Kook-e-you.

Goose . . . . . Ne-uck-a-luck.

Grave . . . . . E-le-wah.

Hair of the head . . . . . Noo-yah.

Hair of the face . . . . . Oo-ming.

Here (take it) . . . . . Awk.

Here (this place) . . . . . Man-nee.

Hat . . . . . Uck-che-wa-loo.

Hills . . . . . Kak-ka.

How many? . . . . . Katch-ening?

House . . . . . Igloe.

How do you do  
(salute)? . . . . . Ashow-you didlee?

Well, thank you  
(reply) . . . . . Ta-bow-you-adlo.

Halloo . . . . . Chimo.

Hot . . . . . Oo-co.

Hungry . . . . . Ka-pa.

Hungry (they  
are) . . . . . Kak-too.

Hard tack . . . . . Shee-va.

Ice (salt water) . . . . . Se-co.

Ice (fresh water) . . . . . Nee-lug.

Ice (to cut with  
chisel) . . . . . Too-y-lako.

Iceberg . . . . . Pick-a-lulial.

Ice chisel . . . . . Too-woke.

I, me, mine . . . . . Oo-wunga.

I did not see it . . . . . Tacko-naumee.

I want it . . . . . Oo-wung-aloo.

It is good . . . . . Pee-a-uke.

Island . . . . . Kig-yuck-ta.

Island (large) . . . . . Kack-ec-tuck-dua.

Iron . . . . . Sev-wick.

Ivory . . . . . Too-wak.

Indian . . . . . Ik-kil-lin.

Jack-knife . . . . . Pook-ta-you.

Jump . . . . . Ob-look-too.

Just right . . . . . Nah-muck-too.

Kick . . . . . Ish-ec-ma-ac-too.

King's Cape . . . . . Telle-pin.

Knife . . . . . Chub-beck.

Kill . . . . . To-ko-pah-hah.

Kiss . . . . . Coon-e-gee.

Laugh . . . . . Ig-luck-too.

Land . . . . . Noo-na.

Land (main) . . . . . Eel-a-wee-yun.

Lake . . . . . Siseell.

Large . . . . . Unga-yon.

Last year . . . . . Uck-kaw-nee.

Lead . . . . . Uck-e-chu.

Live (reside) . . . . . Noona-gin.

Look at it . . . . . Tack-o-wack.

Line . . . . . Ud-le-ung.

Little . . . . . Mick-a-you.

Little River . . . . . Koog-sh-la.

Long ago . . . . . Tap-shoo-mann-nee.

Loon . . . . . Kok-saw.

Man . . . . . Ung-on.

Make . . . . . Sen-a-you.

Me . . . . . Oo-wunga.

Meat . . . . . Pak-too.

Matches . . . . . Icko-ma.

Medicine man . . . . . Ang-e-koke.

Mine . . . . . Pie-ga.

Mica . . . . . Ked-luck-e-yack.

Moon . . . . . Tuck-ee.

Morning . . . . . Ood-la.

Mouse . . . . . Ah-ving-ea.

Musk-ox . . . . . Oo-ming-munk.

Much . . . . . Am-e-suit.

Mountain . . . . . King-yi.

Narwhal . . . . . Ud-lee-ung.

Near (very) . . . . . Koon-e-took-aloo.

Near (rather) . . . . . Koon-e-took-e-  
makea.

# APPENDIX

Next year . . . . .	Uck-kak-go.	Seal (fresh water) . . . . .	Kaus-e-gea.
Needle . . . . .	Mit-cone.	Seal (square flip-	
No . . . . .	Au-guy, Nowk.	per) . . . . .	Ug-jook.
North . . . . .	Wungna.	Seal (jumping) . . . . .	Ky-aug-lee.
North Star . . . . .	Nicky-chew-e too.	Ship . . . . .	Oo-may-ae-due.
Now . . . . .	Man-nah.	Steamship . . . . .	Ick-o-ma-ling.
Night . . . . .	Oo-din-nook.	South . . . . .	Neeg-yill.
Oar . . . . .	E-poot.	Stars . . . . .	Ud-loo-a-ah.
Old man . . . . .	Ick-too-aloo.	Sun . . . . .	Suc-e-nok.
Old woman . . . . .	Ning-e-wah-loo.	Summer . . . . .	Oak-e-youk.
One . . . . .	Attowsha.	Spear (seal) . . . . .	Oo-nah.
One more . . . . .	At-ta-loo.	Shut the door . . . . .	Oo-may-gee.
On the other side . . . . .	Igloe-annie.	Something to eat . . . . .	I-pa-pa.
Out of doors . . . . .	Seel-a-me.	Sick . . . . .	Ah-ah.
Open the door . . . . .	Mat-a-wa-goo.	See . . . . .	Tacko.
Only one . . . . .	Ta-but-tua.	Small . . . . .	Micky-you.
Over there . . . . .	Ti-ma.	Small (very) . . . . .	Micky-uck-aloo.
Paper . . . . .	Al-le-lay-yook.	Spots . . . . .	Mee-luck.
Perhaps . . . . .	Shug-a-me.	Scars . . . . .	Kidley.
Pork . . . . .	Ook-e-mara.	Steal . . . . .	Tidley-poo.
Powder . . . . .	Uck-dna.	Speak . . . . .	Wah-poo.
Presently . . . . .	Wet-chow.	Sled . . . . .	Komitick.
Pretty . . . . .	Mah-muk-poo.	Shot . . . . .	Uck-e-la.
Quick . . . . .	Tu-quilee.	Spear (to kill	
Rain . . . . .	See-la-loo.	with) . . . . .	Now-lick-ta.
Rabbit . . . . .	Ook-quil-la.	Sew . . . . .	Muck-chuck-too.
Rat . . . . .	Tithea.	Shoot . . . . .	Kook-o-ak-too.
Rapids . . . . .	E-tem-na-zuck.	Short time ago . . . . .	Tick-ecove.
Raven . . . . .	Too-loo-ah.	Six . . . . .	Uck-bin-e-gin.
Reindeer . . . . .	Took-too.	Seven . . . . .	Uck-bin-e-mok-o-
Reindeer horns . . . . .	Nug-dew.		nik.
Reindeer (fawn) . . . . .	No-kak.	Sleep . . . . .	Shin-ig-poo.
Reindeer (young		Smell . . . . .	Tee-pe.
buck) . . . . .	Nu-ka-tu-a.	Sister . . . . .	Ne-yowk-a-luong-a.
Red . . . . .	Owg.	Sleeping-bag . . . . .	Shin-ig-bee.
River . . . . .	Koog.	Spy glass . . . . .	King-noot.
Rock . . . . .	We-a-gook.	Swap (trade) . . . . .	Ok-ke-lay-yook.
Run . . . . .	Ood-luk-too.	Strong . . . . .	Shung-e-yook.
Remember . . . . .	Kow-ye-mee-yow-a.	Spring . . . . .	Oo-ping-yak.
Rope . . . . .	Ook-so-noya.	Snow . . . . .	Con-nee.
Red-head . . . . .	Ky-yow-aloo.	Snow house . . . . .	Igloe.
Resolution		Sinew . . . . .	Ib-a-loo.
Island . . . . .	Too-jung.	Smoke . . . . .	E-shik.
Reside . . . . .	Noo-naggin.	Smoke (verb) . . . . .	Pay-u-let-ee.
River (big) . . . . .	Koog-o-ak.	Smoke (give me) . . . . .	Pay-u-let-ee-de-
Resemble . . . . .	Ti-ma-too.		lung-a.
Same . . . . .	Ti-ma-too.	Snow stick . . . . .	An-owt-er.
Seal (small) . . . . .	Poe-see.	Take . . . . .	Pe-e-ock-i-re.
Seal . . . . .	Net-chuck.	Tent . . . . .	To-pick.
		Teeth . . . . .	Kee-you.
		Thimble . . . . .	Teck-kin.
		Thunder . . . . .	Kud-loo.
		Tide rising . . . . .	Ill-e-pook.



## APPENDIX

Tide falling . . . . .Tine-e-pook.  
To-day . . . . .Ood-loome.  
To-night . . . . .Ood-la.  
To-morrow . . . . .Kow-pung.  
The other day . . . . .Tatch-e-munny.  
Tongue . . . . .Ook-ah.  
Trade . . . . .Ok-ke-lay-loo.  
Tracks . . . . .Too-me.  
Trousers . . . . .Kod-ling.  
Thank you . . . . .Koo-id-na-mik.  
Thread . . . . .Ih-e-loo.  
Tell . . . . .Kow-yow-ya.  
That will do . . . . .Ta-ba.  
Throw . . . . .Me-loo-e-ak-took.

Ugly . . . . .Pe-ne-took.  
Understand . . . . .Kow-e-me-yow.  
Up . . . . .Ta-pau-ney.

Warm . . . . .Oo-ko.  
Water . . . . .Emmick.  
Warmth (personal) . . . . .Oo-ko ning-ah.

Walrus . . . . .I-hyl.  
Walrus hide . . . . .Kow.  
Wait . . . . .Watch-ow.  
Walk . . . . .Pe-shook-too.  
Wake up . . . . .Too-pook-poo.  
What is that? . . . . .Kiss-yowa?  
What do you  
want for it? . . . . .Kiss-yow-ok-a-la-  
loo?

What are you  
making? . . . . .Kiss-yow-livie?  
What? . . . . .Shua?  
Where . . . . .Now-te mee.  
When . . . . .Kunga.  
When do you go? . . . . .Kunga-and-luck-  
too?

We . . . . .U-va-gut.  
Who . . . . .Kee-a.  
Who owns it? . . . . .Kee-a-pinga?  
Winter . . . . .Ook-e-yook.  
Wind . . . . .An-a-way.  
White man . . . . .Kud-loo-nah.  
White . . . . .Kak-owk-tah.  
Why? . . . . .Kun-we-mun?  
Whale . . . . .Ook-bik.  
Whip . . . . .Ip-e-row-ter.  
Will you? . . . . .E-ben-loo?  
Wife . . . . .Nell-e-aug-na.  
Wood . . . . .Kee-yow.  
Woman . . . . .Koo-nee.  
Wolverine . . . . .Cow-bik.

Woman's boat . . . . .Oo-me-ack.  
Wolf . . . . .Am-miow.  
Work . . . . .Sen-a-yow.  
White gull . . . . .Now-yah.

Yes . . . . .Ah-me-lah.  
Year . . . . .Ok-ah-ney.  
Yesterday . . . . .Ick-puck-shall.  
Yesterday even-  
ing . . . . .Ick-puck-shall-  
ood-la.

You . . . . .Ib-bee (or Ich bin).  
You and I . . . . .Oo-bah-gook.  
Young boy . . . . .Un-nick-e-loo-ga.  
Young girl . . . . .Pen-nick-e-loo-ga.  
Youngster . . . . .Neu-ts-a.

### NUMERALS.

One . . . . .At-tow-sha.  
Two . . . . .Mok-oo.  
Three . . . . .Ping-ah-suet.  
Four . . . . .Seet-a-mut.  
Five . . . . .Ted-le-mut.  
Six . . . . .Uck-bin-e-gin.  
Seven . . . . .Uck-bin-e-Mok-o-  
nik.  
Eight . . . . .Uck-bin-e-Mok-o-  
suet.  
Nine . . . . .Uck-bin-e-seet-a-  
mut.  
Ten . . . . .Koling.  
Twenty . . . . .Mok-ko-ling.

### PHRASES.

Come in . . . . .Ki-low-it.  
Go ahead . . . . .At-tay.  
Give me a light . . . . .Ik-ke-de-lung-a.  
Give me a drink . . . . .Im-mil-bah.  
Give me a smoke . . . . .Pay-u-let-e-de-  
lung-a.  
It is good . . . . .Pee-a-uke.  
I don't know . . . . .Shu-ga-mes.  
I don't under-  
stand . . . . .Cow-you-mung-e-  
too.  
What is the  
name of? . . . . .I-ting-er?  
What are you  
making? . . . . .Shu-la-vik?  
Which way? . . . . .Nel-le-ung nook?  
Where from? . . . . .Nuck-ke-nu-nah?  
Where do you  
come from? . . . . .Nuck-ke-pe-wiet?  
Who is it? . . . . .Kee-now-yah?

9-

h?  
n?  
t?

12